

اللغة العربية وقواعدها

تأليف

الدكتور، يوحانان كابليواتزكي

روبين ماس / القدس

ARABIC

LANGUAGE and GRAMMAR

by

Dr. JOCHANAN KAPLIWATZKY

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

PREFACE

This book is the first in a series of books which I am about to publish for English students who wish to learn the Arabic language thoroughly and by an easy method.

This book is the result of many years of experience that I acquired in the instruction of Semitic languages generally and of the Arabic language particularly*).

It is the result of the scientific books that I wrote in the Oriental Institute of the Vienna University and in the Semitic-Islamic Institute of the Berlin University**), and of the Arabic school-books which I published for Hebrew students in Palestine***).

The aim of this book and of those which will follow it is to guide the beginner from the alphabet to a full knowledge of the Arabic language without subjecting him to any undue difficulty and without burdening the grammatical rules with terms and explanations that often cause much difficulty to the layman in matters philological.

In the very first lesson of this book the beginner will start reading with all the vowels and will go on thus till page 56. It is only there that he will find the list of the Arabic alphabet in its proper order. By then he will have learned all the rules pertaining to correct Arabic reading.

In the pages 1-55 only the lessons 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 15,

*) 1922-1930 in Vienna, 1931-1933 in Berlin and from 1934 in Palestine.

**) 1. Scientific Grammar of the Arabic Language, 1928

2. Translation of the Hamurapi Laws (from the original), 1930

3. Scientific Grammar of the Syrian (Aramaic) Language, 1932

4. Translation of the manuscript of the Arabic Commentary on the Mishna of Maimonides (the Tractates Baba-Qama and Baba-Mesia), 1933

5. A dictionary and notes to the philosophical book *Dalalat al-Ha'iqat* of Maimonides, 1932-3

***) 1. The Arabic Language and Grammar, part I, 1937
(A new edition is under press)

2. " " " part II, 1938

3. The Arabic Script, 1938

4. The Arabic Verb and its Conjugations, 1938

5. Palestinian Colloquial Arabic, part I, 1939

6. Selected Pieces of the Arabic Prose, 1939



All rights reserved

Copyright by Rubin Mass, Jerusalem

Printed in Israel

Hemed Press, Jerusalem

17, 18, 19, 20 and 22 are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa; the other lessons in the above pages are only reading lessons and are not to be translated.

From the 57th page onward each grammatical lesson is followed by one, two or three reading lessons composed of texts which are to be translated from Arabic into English and vice versa. The subject matter of these exercises always accords with the preceding grammatical lesson and each of the above texts is followed by an Arabic-English Vocabulary, in which the new words of the text are given.

In these vocabularies I often inserted notes referring to the syntax of the Arabic language in order to explain the structure of the Arabic sentence.

At the end of this book an English-Arabic Vocabulary is appended which contains all the words found in the texts that are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Of the verb I have given in this book only the Past and Imperfect (= future and present in the European sense). These were but superficially explained in lessons 11, 17 and 19 in order to facilitate the use of the verb in the texts of this book also. The verb will be fully dealt with in the next book of this series, which is to be published in the very near future.

As a parting word may I draw the beginner's special attention to notes 3 — 5 on page 1 which refer to the correct pronunciation of the Arabic vowels **a, i, u**.

In order to help the student in the study of this book, a key is likewise appended to it.

At the end of this preface I wish to express my sincerest thanks to Mr. Mordecai Zlotnik M.A., at present Programme Assistant (Hebrew Talks) at the Palestine Broadcasting Service, who put at my disposition his wide knowledge of the English, Arabic and Hebrew languages in reading the proofs and in advising me as to the English presentation of the present book.

JERUSALEM,

J. KAPLIWATZKY

Grammatical Contents

	page
The pronunciation of the Arabic vowels a, i, u	1
The short vowels (.....)	1
Sukūn (.....)	3
Tanwīn (.....)	4
The long vowels (.....)	10
Tashdīd (.....)	11
Accent	12
The Tanwīn (.....)	17
Hamza (.....)	19
The long vowel ā expressed by	27
The past	28
Tā-Marbuta (.....)	31
Madda (.....)	32
Hamzat-l-wasl (.....)	40
Imperfect (= present and future in the European sense)	48
Alif Maqṣūra (.....)	52
The list of the alphabet	56
The definite article	57
The indefinite article	57
The cases	61
Feminine	75
Dual	78

First Lesson

	page
Plural	90
Broken plural	99
The Tanwīn-less nouns	109
Possessive pronouns	115
Adjective	124
The cardinal numbers	129
The ordinal numbers	139
English-Arabic Vocabulary	147—168
KEY	

ب (b) (1) ب (bb) (2)

ب (ba) (3) ب (bi) (4) ب (bu) (5)

ب (babu) (6) ب (baba) (7) ب (bibu) (8)

ب (babu) (9) ب (baba) (10) ب (bibu) (11)

ب (babu) (12) ب (baba) (13) ب (bibu) (14)

(1) The letter **b** (ب) is designated by a point under it.

(2) The letter **b** is written ب only at the end of a word. But at the beginning of a word, or in the middle of it, it is shortened thus ب (bb).

(3) The vowel **a** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **a** in the English words : farm, father.

(4) The vowel **i** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **i** in the English words : pin, fit, bring.

(5) The vowel **u** is pronounced in Arabic like the vowel **u** in the English words : push, pull.

(6) In Arabic there are three short vowels and three long vowels. The short vowels are :

1. ا (a) ب (ba). A small diagonal stroke over the consonant.

2. إ (i) ب (bi). A small diagonal stroke under the consonant.

3. و (u) ب (bu). The sign و over the consonant.

For the long vowels see page 10 (19).

نَبِينٌ (nabīn) تَثِينٌ (tathīna) تَثِيبٌ (tathīb)

نَبِيتٌ (nabīat) ثَبِيتٌ (thabūt)

نَبِيتٌ تَنْبِتٌ ثَبِيتٌ ثَبِيتٌ تَبِيتٌ

نَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ — ثَبِيتٌ

Second Lesson

ل (la) لَّ (lā) لِ (lī)

نَبِلٌ (nabīl) نَبِلٌ (nabīl) نَبِلٌ (nabīl)

(11) At the end of the words, the three vowel-signs are sometimes written double, thus:

are pronounced as if the letter ن (n) was written after them. For example: نَبِيتٌ (binīn) ثَبِيتٌ (thabīn) ثَبِيتٌ (thabīn).

The sign is a shortened form of

These double-vowel signs

are called in Arabic

تَشْوِيشٌ. See page 17 (43).

لَبِيتٌ (labīn) لَبِيتٌ (lābān) لَبِيتٌ (lābān)

لَبِيتٌ (labīn) لَبِيتٌ (lābān) لَبِيتٌ (lābān)

لَبِيتٌ (labīn) لَبِيتٌ (lābān) لَبِيتٌ (lābān)

لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ

لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ — لَبِيتٌ

ك (k) كُ (kā) كِ (kī)

كَتَبَ (katāb) كَتَبَ (kātib) كَتَبَ (kātib)

كَتَبَ (katāb) كَتَبَ (kātib) كَتَبَ (kātib)

كَتَبَ (katāb) كَتَبَ (kātib) كَتَبَ (kātib)

(12) A small diagonal stroke over the vowel indicates that

this syllable is accented

كَلْبُكَ (kalbuka) تَبْنُكَ (tibnuka)

كُتِبَ لَكَ كَلْبٌ كَتَبَنَ كَتَبْتَ

تَكْتُبُ - تَكْتُبِينَ - لَكَ - كَلْبُكَ - بَنُتَكَ -

كَلْبٌ - كَتَبَنَ - بَنِي - كُفْتُ - كَتَبْتَ -

كُتِبَ - بَنُتَكَ - لِكَلْبِكَ - نَبَاكَ.

رَرَرَر (r) (r) (r) (r)

رَكِبَ تَرَكَّبَ تَرَكَّبُ رَكَبْتَ

رَكَبَ بَكَرَ كَبُرَ كَبُرْتَ

تَرَاكَ تَرَاكَتْ (taraku) (taraku)

(13) The letter ر (r) is always pronounced in Arabic like r in the English words: run, ring.

(14) The letter ر (r) cannot be joined to the following letter. For

example: رَكَبَ (rakiba).

تَرَاكَ تَرَاكَتْ تَرَكَّبَ تَرَكَّبُ

كُتِبَ - تَرَكَّبَ - تَرَكَّبُ - رَكَبَ - تَرَكَّبَ -

كَلْبٌ - تَبْنُ - تَرَاكَ - تَرَاكَ - تَرَكَّبُ - تَرَكَّبُ

تَرَكَّبَ - رَكَبْتَ - بَنِي - بَنِي - بَنِي

زَزَز (z) (z) (z) (z)

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

زَلَزَلَ زَلَزَلَتْ زَلَزَلَتْ

Third Lesson

و (w) (16) و و و (wawiwu)

وَرَثَ (wārathā) وَكَلَّ (wākala)

ثَوْبٌ (thawbun) ثَوْبٌ (thawrun)

لَوْنٌ (lawnin) لَوْنٌ (lawrin)

وَثْبٌ (wāzara) وَزَرَ (wāhaba)

تَوَثَّ لَثَوْرٍ لَثَوْبٍ وَرَثَنَ نَزَلَ

تَوَثَّ - كَلْبِكَ - ثَوْبٌ - ثَوْبٌ - تَوَثَّ

تَوَثَّ - تَكْتَبُ - تَكْتَبُ - وَثْبٌ - وَثْبٌ - تَكْتَبُ

لَا - تَكْتَبُ - تَوَثَّ - لَوْنٌ - ثَوْبٌ

(16) The letter و (w) is pronounced like the English w in the

words: wait, wonder

(17) The letter و (w) cannot be joined to the following letter. for

example: وَكَلَّ (wākala).

ي (y) (18) ي ي ي (yiyuya)

يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) يَكْتُبُ (yārkaḥu)

يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) يَكْتُبُ (yārkaḥu)

رَوِيَ (rāwīya) رَوِيَ (rāwīya)

بَيْتٌ (bāyin) يَنْزِلُ (yānzilu)

يَرْثُ يَثْبُ نَزَلَ بَيْتَكَ رَوَيْتَ

يَرْثُ - تَوَثَّ - يَكْتُبُ - يَنْزِلُ - رَوَيْتَ

رَوَيْتَ - يَنْزِلُ - بَيْتٌ - بَيْتٌ - بَيْتٌ

يَمَامُ (mimamu)

يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) يَكْتُبُ (yārkaḥu)

يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) يَكْتُبُ (yārkaḥu)

يَكْتُبُ (yaktubu) يَكْتُبُ (yārkaḥu)

(18) The letter ي (y) is pronounced like y in the English words: yes, yet.

رَمِيتُمْ زُرَّتْ بَيْتِ زُرْنِ يَهْرُونَ
 كَتَبْتُمْ - كَتَبْتُمْ - زُرْتُمْ - مَتَلْتُمْ - يَتَلْتُمْ
 مَرَكَبْتُمْ - وَرَثْتُمْ - تَرَكْتُمْ - رَكِبْتُمْ - تَوَرَّكْتُمْ
 زِي (zī) زَوْ (zū) زَا (zā) بَاب (bāb) (baḥbun)
 زَارَ (zāra) زُورِي (zurī) (ma)

(19) The long vowels (See above page 1 (6)) are :

1. ي (y) followed by آ (ā) اِي (ī)

(II) اِي (ā) يِ

2. و (w) followed by ا (a) the vowel (u) followed by و (w) . For example

يَزُورُ (yazūru) يَكُونُ (yakūnu)

3. ا (a) followed by the letter ا (ā) which is called

in Arabic **Alif** (ā). For example كَانَ (kāna) بَاب (bāb)

(baḥbun).

The long vowels are designated in the English transcription by a horizontal line above them, for example كَان (kāna) and are pronounced as follows:
 ā like ee in feet; ū like oo in soon and ā like a in rather.

(20) The **Alif** (ā) cannot be joined to the following letter. For example بَاب (bābun)

زُورَ (zūra) زُرَّتْ (zurta) يَكُونُ (yakūnu)
 بَيْتِي (bīti) ثَوْرِي (thawrī) كُوْنِي (kūnī)
 كَلْبِي (kalbi) يَزُورُنَا زُرْنِي تَزُورُونَ
 تَكُونُ - تَكُونُونَ - تَكُونِي - كِتَابِي
 بَاب - بَابِي - ثَوْرِي - كِتَابُنَا - زُورِي - نَزَلْنَا

Fourth Lesson

(s) س س س (sasisu)

سَلَامٌ (sallama) سَلَامٌ (sallama) سَلَامٌ (sallama)

بُسْتَانٌ (bustān) مَنِي (minī) رِي (rī) (rabbī)

(21) The sign " above a consonant indicates that the consonant is doubled. For example سَلَامٌ, sallama, pronunciation: shakkun.

Note: سَلَامٌ is pronounced as though written رَبَّ , سَلَامٌ

رَبَّ = رَبَّ

This sign of double consonant (ʿ) is called in Arabic **Tashdīd** or **Shadda**.

سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun)

سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun)

سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun) سَبَب (sabbabun)

ش (shishusha) ش (shishusha) ش (shishusha)

ش (sharīkun) ش (sharīkun) ش (sharīkun)

ش (sharīkun) ش (sharīkun) ش (sharīkun)

(22) The rules of the accentuation in Arabic are:

1. In words with more than one syllable, the accent is never on the last one.

2. The last syllable but one receives the accent, if the vowel of this syllable is a long one, or if its vowel is followed by a letter with a **Sukun** (°) or with a **Tashdīd** (°) over it.

For example بُسْتَانٌ (bustān) مَسْرُورٌ (masrūr)

كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

3. When the last syllable but one does not correspond to the above-mentioned conditions, the accent falls on the last but two, when this syllable does correspond to the above. For example كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

يَسْرُوكُمْ (yasrūkum) يَسْرُوكُمْ (yasrūkum)

4. In words of four or more syllables the accent is going back to the syllable which corresponds to the above. For

مَشْرُوبٌ (mashrūbun) مَشْرُوبٌ (mashrūbun) مَشْرُوبٌ (mashrūbun)

يَشْرَبُ (yashrabu) يَشْرَبُ (yashrabu) يَشْرَبُ (yashrabu)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra) نَشْرًا (nashra)

5. If all the syllables in the word do not correspond to the

above-mentioned conditions, then the accent falls on the

first syllable. For example كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

6. The Particles فَ (fa) لِ (li) بِ (bi) do not receive

and hamzat-i-wasl (see below page 40 (39)) do not receive

the accent. For example كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta) كَتَبْتُ (katābta)

هَيَّه (h) 8 (hahihu)

بَنَّا لَا وَهَبَ (wáhaba) يَهَبُ (yáhabu)

لَهُمْ كَلْبُهُ (kalbuhu) (lahum) هَرَبَ (haraba)

رَبِّهِ (rabbuhu) بِهِمْ (bihim) لَهُ (lahu) هَلَا (láhā)

كَلْبُهَا (kalbuhā) كَلْبِهِمْ (kalbuhum)

هُوَ هِيَ هُنَّ لَهُ هَا هُمْ

كُنْ كَلْبُكُمْ رَسَمْتُمْ رَسَامَ

كَلْبُهُ - كَرَمَهُ - كَتَابَهَا - كَلْبِهِمْ - كَلْبُنَا - بَيْتَا

بِهِ - مَرَبَّتْ - رَاهِبٌ - وَهَبَ - وَهَبْنَا - يَهَبُ

هَلَاكَ - وَهَبْتُمْ - وَهَبْتَنِي - يُسَلِّمُ - رَبُّكَ

وَلَدَهُ - كَلْبُهَا - كَلْبُكُمْ - يَكْبِتُن - دَرَسَنَ

يَدْرُسُ - دَرَسَ - دَرَسْتُ - دَرَسْنَا - دَرَسْتُمْ

سَرَيْتُمْ - تَرَكَيْتُمْ - مَرَكَبٌ

Fifth Lesson

(read and translate)

لِي (lī) لَيْكَ (láka) لَكَ (láka) "I have" "I have"

"thou (fem.) hast" لَهُ (láhu) "he has" لَهَا (láha) "she has"

لَكُنْ (láka) "we have" لَكُمْ (lákam) "you (masc.) have"

لَهُمْ (láhum) "they (masc.) have"

لَهُنَّ (láhunna) "they (fem.) have"

Plural		Singular
"we have"	لَا	لِي
"you (masc.) have"	لَكُمْ	لَكَ
"you (fem.) have"	لَكُنَّ	لَاكِ
"they (masc.) have"	لَهُمْ	لَهُ
"they (fem.) have"	لَهُنَّ	لَهَا

Translate: she has; we have; thou (fem.) hast; they (masc.) have; he has; thou (masc.) hast; they (fem.) have; I have; you (masc.) have; you (fem.) have.

(read and translate)

1. لِي بَيْتٌ وَلَكَ بَيْتٌ 2. لَنَا بَيْتٌ

3. لَهُ كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهَا كَلْبٌ صَغِيرٌ

4. لَهُمْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَهُمْ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ. وَلَهُمَا كَرْمٌ بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُمْ كَرْمٌ كَبِيرٌ. 6. لَهَا كَرْمٌ وَلَهُ بُسْتَانٌ 7. أَلَا بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ وَكَرْمٌ كَبِيرٌ 8. كَرْمٌ وَبُسْتَانٌ 9. بَيْتٌ وَكَرْمٌ 10. لَهَا كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلِي كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ 11. لَكُمْ كِتَابٌ وَلَهُمْ كِتَابٌ 12. لَنَا ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ وَلَكُنْ ثَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ 13. لَهُ ثَوْرٌ وَأَلَا ثَوْرٌ وَكَلْبٌ.

Vocabulary: 1. بَيْتٌ "house" 2. وَ "and" (see

above page 12:13 (22)) 3. كَبِيرٌ "great"; "big"; "large" (the adjective

is Arabic comes after the noun For example: and

بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 4. كَلْبٌ "dog" 5. سَمِينٌ "fat"

6. كَرْمٌ "vineyard" 7. كَرْمٌ "vineyard" 8. كِتَابٌ "book"

9. ثَوْرٌ "ox"

Translate: 1. We have a dog and they (fem.) have a

dog 2. He has a big house and she has a big garden

3. They (fem.) have a fat ox and a fat dog 4. They (fem.)

have a large vineyard and they (fem.) have a big house

5. Thou (fem.) has a book and we have a book 6. She

has a big book and they (fem.) have a big book

7. They (fem.) have a fat dog and I have a fat ox.

Sixth Lesson

دَدَدِدُ (d) دَدَدِدُ (dadiddu)

دَارُ دَارِي (darun) (dar) دَارُ دَارُ (waladun)

وَلَا وَلَا (waladin) وَلَا (waladin) يَلُ (yadun)

يَلُ يَلُ (yadin) يَلُ (yadin) يَلُ (yalban)

بَيْتًا بَابًا كِتَابًا ثَوْرًا كَرْمًا كَبِيرًا

يَدِي - يَدُنَا - تَارِكُمْ - دِيكُ - يَدُورُ - تَارِكُ

وَلَدِي - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - دَرَسَ - يَدْرُسُ

تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - تَدْرُسُ - يَدُ - يَدُ

دَرَسْنَا - دَرَسْنَا - دَرَسْنَا - يَدُ - يَدُ

(23) The letter د (d) cannot be joined to the following letter.

For example وَلَدِي (waladi).

(24) The Tanwin (a) is always followed by an Alif (ا). For example بَابًا (baban) يَدًا (yadan).

See below page 33 (26).

ذ (dh) (281) ذَذِي (dhadhīdh)

ذَكَرَ (dhákara) يَذْكُرُ (yadhkuru) ذَنْبٌ (ladhīdhun)

كَذَبَ (dhánabun) كَذِبٌ (kidhbu) لَذِيذٌ (ladhīdhun)

ذَكَرْنَا (dhakárnā) ذَكَرَ (dhákara) تَذَكَّرَ (tadhakkuru)

تَذَكَّبَ (tadhkúba) ذَا (dha)

كَذَّبَ (kadhábun) يَكْذِبُ (yadhkuru) تَذَكَّرَ (tadhakkuru)

ذَكَرْتُمْ (dhakartum) ذَكَرْتُ (dhákartu) ذَكَرْتُمْ (dhakartum)

ذَكَرْتُ (dhákartu) ذَكَرْتُ (dhákartu) ذَكَرْتُ (dhákartu)

ف (f) فَفْ (fifufa)

لَفَتْ (lafata) مَلَفُوفٌ (malafūf) ذَفَنٌ (dafanun)

فَلْفٌ (dáfana) فُلْفُلٌ (fulfulun) كَافِرٌ (kāfirun)

فَرَّتْ (farata) فَرَّتْ (farata) فِي (fī)

(282) The letter ذ (dh) is pronounced in Arabic like th in the English words: this, these.

مَفْرُوثٌ (múfradun) دَفَنْتَ (dúfinat)

لَفَّ شَرِيفٌ (sharīf) شَرِيفٌ (sharīf) فَرَّ (farata)

فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh) فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh) فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh)

فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh) فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh) فَرَّاشٌ (farāsh)

مَاءٌ (mā'un) (283)

شَاءَ (shā'a) أَكَلَ (ákala) أَبٌ (abun)

أَبَا (abā) أَبَا (abā) أَبَا (abā)

أَبَا (abā) أَبَا (abā) أَبَا (abā)

(284) The letter ا which is called in Arabic Hamza is a click produced by a quick compression of the upper part of the throat. This sound is foreign to English.

But the best way to pronounce it in English is to pronounce every ء like a u in the beginning of the English words:

is, ill, after etc. For example: ماء, pronunciation: mā'a, pronunciation: mā'a, pronunciation: mā'a

ماء (mā'a) ماء (mā'a) ماء (mā'a)

ماء (mā'a) ماء (mā'a) ماء (mā'a)

The Hamza (ء) is written sometimes with 1 (alif), sometimes

سَأَلْتُ سَوَّالًا يَبْدَأُ (sa'ilun) (su'dalun) يَبْدَأُ

(yábdadu) انْبِىْ (unbi'a) يَاكُلُ (yá'kulu)

أَمْرًا زَائِرًا يَبْدَأُ رَأَيْتَ بِنَاءً

أَسْرًا - أَسِيرًا - أَسْلَمَ - يُؤَكِّدُ - يَبْدَأُ - سَائِرُ
سَائِلًا - أُرْسِدَ - أَكَّدَ - أَمِنَ - سَالَ

times with ي (y) and sometimes with و (w) or without any other letter. For example أَكَلْتُ (akalta); بَدَأَ (badda'a); سَأَلَ (su'ila); يُؤَكِّدُ (yu'akkidu); شَاءَ (sha'a).

Note: 1. When the **hamza** is written with ا (a), then

the ي is written without its two points. For example

هَنِيئٌ (hani'a), سَائِلٌ (su'ila)

2. يَ يِ يٌ etc. is pronounced 'a, 'u, and

not: wa, wu, ya, yu etc.

3. سَالَ, سَائِلٌ, pronunciation: sa'ala, pronunciation: sa'ala.

4. يَأْكُلُ, يَأْمُرُ, pronunciation: ya'kulu, ya'imuru,

as if there was a short pause after the first vowel.
Note: The letter ط will be designated in the English transcription by the sign 't'.

Seventh Lesson

(read and translate)

1. لِي أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ وَلَهُ أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ 2. بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ

وَبَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 3. لَنَا بَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُمْ شَبَابٌ

كَبِيرٌ 4. لَهَا دِيَارٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ وَلَهَا دِيَارٌ

كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 5. لَكُمْ قَوْمٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ

6. لَكُنْ بَيْتٌ وَسَمِينٌ وَلَهَا كَرَمٌ كَبِيرٌ 7. أَنَا

وَأَنْتَ 8. أَنْتَ وَهُوَ 9. هُوَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ

وَأَنْتَ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 10. لِي فِيلٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ

وَلَهُ قَوْمٌ سَمِينٌ 11. لَهَا دَفْطَرٌ وَكِتَابٌ وَلَكَ دَفْطَرٌ

وَكِتَابٌ 12. فِيلٌ وَتَوْرٌ. بَيْتٌ وَبُسْتَانٌ.

Vocabulary: 10. أَبٌ "father" 11. أُمٌّ "mother" 12. بَابٌ "door", "gate" 13. شَبَابٌ "window" 14. دِيَارٌ "cock" 15. أَنَا "I" 16. أَنْتَ "thou (masc)" 17. هُوَ "he" 18. فِيلٌ "elephant" 19. دَفْطَرٌ "writing-book", "copy-book" (Note: هُوَ سَمِينٌ "he is fat"; أَنَا سَمِينٌ "I am fat").

Translate: 1. A big door and a big window 2. Thou hast a fat elephant and we have a big and a fat 'x

3. I have a copy-book and a book and he has a book
4. She has a fat cock 5. We have a dog and you (fem.) have a dog 6. A father and a mother 7. I and he. He and thou (masc.) 8. He is fat 9. thou (masc.) art fat and big 10. You (masc.) have a father and a mother and we have a father and a mother.

Eighth Lesson

(read and translate)

كَلْبٌ (kalbun) "dog"

كَلْبِي (kalbī) "my dog" كَلْبُكَ (kalbuk) "thy (masc.) dog",

كَلْبُكِ (kalbukī) "thy (fem.) dog", كَلْبُهُ (kalbuhu) "his dog",

كَلْبُهَا (kalbuhā) "her dog", كَلْبُنَا (kalbunā) "our dog", كَلْبُكُمْ (kalbukum) "your (masc.) dog", كَلْبُكُنَّ (kalbukunna) "your (fem.) dog", كَلْبُهُمْ (kalbuhum) "their (masc.) dog", كَلْبُهُنَّ (kalbuhunna) "their (fem.) dog"

Plural	Singular
"our dog" كَلْبُنَا	"my dog" كَلْبِي
"your (masc.) dog" كَلْبُكُمْ	"thy (masc.) dog" كَلْبُكَ
"your (fem.) dog" كَلْبُكُنَّ	"thy (fem.) dog" كَلْبُكِ
"their (masc.) dog" كَلْبُهُمْ	"his dog" كَلْبُهُ
"their (fem.) dog" كَلْبُهُنَّ	"her dog" كَلْبُهَا

Translate: Thy (masc.) dog; our dog; his dog; their (masc.) dog; their (fem.) dog; her dog; my dog; thy (fem.) dog; their (fem.) dog; your (masc.) dog.

Declinate the following two nouns:

بَيْتٌ "house" كِتَابٌ "book"

بَيْتِي "my house" كِتَابِي "my book"

بَيْتُكَ "thy (masc.) house" كِتَابُكَ "thy (masc.) book"

etc. etc.

and also:

بَابٌ "gate"; دُورٌ "ox" كَرْمٌ "vineyard" بُسْتَانٌ "garden"

فِيلٌ "elephant".

Ninth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. لِي أَرَبٌ وَهَذَا أَرَبٌ 2. أَرَبُكَ أَكْبَرُ

مِنْ أَرَبِي 3. لَهُ كَلْبٌ وَلِي كَلْبٌ 4. كَلْبُهُ

أَسْمَنُ مِنْ كَلْبِي 5. سَلِيمٌ وَلَدٌ كَبِيرٌ 6. شَاكِرٌ

تَلْمِذٌ كَبِيرٌ 7. سَلِيمٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تَلْمِذِي

8. شَاكِرٌ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ وَلَدِي 9. أَيْنَ تَوْرَتُكَ؟

10. كِتَابُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كِتَابِي تَوْرِي فِي بُسْتَانِي

11. كَرَمَهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَرَمِي 12. تَوَرَّهْ أَكْبَرُ
وَأَسْمُنُ مِنْ تَوَرِّي 13. تَوَرَّكَ وَكَلْبِكَ فِي بُسْتَانِي
14. أَيْنَ تَلْمِذُكَ؟ - تَلْمِذِي فِي كَرَمِي 15. بَيْتُهُ
أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 16. أَيْنَ أَرَبِي؟ - أَرَبُكَ فِي
كَرَمِي.

Vocabulary: 20. أَهْنُ "here" 21. مِنْ "from"; "of".

22. أَكْبَرُ مِنْ "greater (bigger) than" "big"
23. سَلِيمٌ "fatter than" (سَمِينٌ "fat") 24. سَلِيمٌ "Salim"
(proper noun masculine) 25. شَاكِرٌ "Shakir" (proper noun masculine)
26. وَلَدٌ "boy" 27. تَلْمِذٌ "pupil" 28. سَلِيمٌ "Salim"
(is) a big boy" شَاكِرٌ وَلَدٌ كَبِيرٌ "Shakir (is) a big boy";
29. فِي "in".

Translate: 1. His dog is fatter than my dog.

2. Where is their (masc.) ox? - their ox is in my garden.
3. Her cock is fatter than my cock 4. Thy (masc.) hare is in
my garden 5. His boy is bigger than my boy 6. Where
is my pupil and thy (masc.) pupil? - my pupil and thy (masc.)
pupil are in my vineyard 7. I have an ox and she has
an ox. Her ox is bigger and fatter than my ox 8. Where
is our dog? - Your (masc.) dog is in my house.

Tenth Lesson

ق ق (q) (27) قَقِ (qiquqa)

قَدَسَ (qaddasa) قَالَ (qala) يَقُولُ (yaqulu)

يَقْدَسُ (yaddisu) دَقِيقٌ (daqiqun) قَبْلَ

قَامَ (qama) يَقُومُ (yaqumu)

رَفِيقٌ قُلْنَا قَامَتْ دَقِ شَقِ

سَوَقٌ - قَلِيلٌ - قَوْلِي - قُمْنَا - اسْوَأَقْ - شَقِيقٌ
قَنَائِلٌ - قَرَأَ - قَرَأْتُ - يَهْرَأُ - تَهْرِيئٌ - فَرِيقٌ

ج ج (g) (28) جَجَج (giguqa)

جَسَمٌ جَمَلٌ (gimalun) جَمَلٌ (gismun)

تَرَجَمَ (tarjama) جَنُونٌ (magnunun) تَرَجُمَ (righun)

(27) The letter ق is a k sound produced in the throat. In the
English transcription it will be designated by q.

(28) The letter ج (g) is pronounced like the j and like the
g in the English words: Joy and Gentle.
In the English transcription it will be designated by g.

جَدِيدٌ (gad'idun) جَلَسَ (gālasa)
 تَاجِرٌ جَمَلِيٌّ بِجَانِبِ يَجْلِسُ
 جَدُوبٌ - جَرٌّ - نَجْلِسُ - جَالِسٌ - مَاجٌ - هَاجٌ
 نَاجِسٌ - جَمَلِيٌّ - لُجْمِيٌّ - تَرْجَمْتُ - جِيسْمُكَ -
 جَدٌّ - جَدَّدْتِي - جَلَسْنَا - جَلَسْتُمْ - جَرَّتْ.

ح (29) حَسَّحَ (hiḥḥa)

لَحْمٌ حَكِيمٌ (lāḥimun) بَحْرٌ (baḥrun)
 رَحِيمٌ (raḥimun) مَرَجٌ (mārgun) سَلَحٌ (wāḥidun)
 حَلَبٌ (ḥalībun) وَاحِدٌ (wāḥidun) سَلَحٌ (sallāḥa)
 حَلَّتْ حَمَلٌ سَلَحٌ رَحِمٌ

(29) The letter ح (h) is a consonant which usually gives much trouble to English students. It is a strong aspirated h produced with effort.

In the English transcription it will be designated by h.

حَارِسٌ - لَحْمٌ - لَحْمُكَ - وَاحِدٌ - يَحْرُسُونَ
 مَرْحُومٌ - نَعْتٌ - حَرَكَاتٌ - مَلِجٌ - حَرْبٌ - نَجَاحٌ
 يَعْمَلُ - حَدَّثَ - حَوَارِثٌ.

خ (30) خَرَجَ (khāragu) يَخْرِجُ (yākhruḡu) خَمْسٌ (khābarsun)
 خَرَجَ (khāragu) خَرَجَتْ (dakhāla) خَبِرَ (khābarsun)

لَكُنْ (31) هَذَا (hādha) خَمْسٌ (khāmsin)

إِلَهُ (ilāḥun) أَبْرَهِيمَ (ibrāḥimū) خَبِرَ (khābarsun)
 دَخَلْنَا - خَرَجْنَا - حَرِيقٌ - خَبِرٌ - ذَلِكْ
 هَذِهِ - أَجْبَرٌ - جَارٌ - خَرَجْنَا - أَجْرَجَ

(30) The letter خ (kh) is the same as the ch in Scottish words, such as loch. But more from the throat.

(31) In some words the long vowel ā is expressed by a short vertical stroke over the consonant. For example: هَذَا (hādha), ذَلِكْ (dhālik) etc.

11. مَنْ أَكَلَ فِي بُسْتَانِي؟ - أَيْ أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ 12. أَخِي
كَتَبَ هُنَا وَأَخِي كَتَبَتْ هُنَاكَ 13. جَمَلِي أَكَلَ
هُنَا وَجَمَلُكَ أَكَلَ هُنَاكَ 14. هُمْ كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا
15. هُنَّ رَسَمْنَ وَمَا كَتَبْنَ 16. نَحْنُ خَرَجْنَا مِنْ
بُسْتَانِي وَأَنْتُمْ خَرَجْتُمْ مِنْ هُنَاكَ 17. هُمْ رَسَمُوا
وَأَنْتُمْ مَا رَسَمْتُمْ 18. نَحْنُ وَأَنْتُمْ. هُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ.
أَنَا وَهِيَ. أَنْتَ وَهُوَ. هِيَ وَأَنْتَ 19. كَتَبْنَا
وَمَا رَسَمْنَا. رَسَمْتُمْ وَمَا كَتَبْتُمْ. كَتَبُوا وَمَا رَسَمُوا.

Vocabulary:

30. مَا "what?" 31. هَذَا "this" 32. هَاجَرٌ "this is an ass" (هَذَا هَاجَرٌ)
33. كَتَبْتُ "I wrote" 34. مَا "no!" 35. مَنْ "who?" 36. كَتَبْتُ "I wrote" 37. رَسَمْتُ "I wrote"
38. أَخِي "brother" 39. هُنَاكَ "there" 40. أُخْتُ "sister" 41. جَمَلٌ "camel" 42. خَرَجَ "to go out" 43. هُنَا "here" 44-50. هُنَّ "they" etc. See above p. 28.

Note 1: The Arabic verb usually has three radical letters

as رَسَمَ. أَكَلَ. كَتَبَ.

Note 2: In dictionaries the Arabic verb is found in its

3rd pers. sing. masc. active form. This form is generally given in the dictionaries as the infinitive of the verb. Thus write: "he ate"; "he wrote"

Translate:

1. I ate (have eaten) and thou (fem.) didst not eat
2. They (masc.) wrote (have written) and we drew (have drawn)
3. My father went out of my garden
4. My mother went out of my vineyard
5. We wrote and he did not write
6. My pupil has a brother and a sister and thou (fem.) hast a brother
7. Thy (masc.) camel ate (has eaten) and my ass did not eat
8. What is this? — this is a camel
9. Your (masc.) dog is bigger and fatter than my dog
10. We ate (have eaten) in my garden
11. He ate (has eaten) and she did not eat
12. My sister wrote (has written) and you (fem.) did not write
13. Your (masc.) brother went out of my vineyard
14. We ate and she did not eat.

Thirteenth Lesson

(33) (t) ع

مَلِينَةٌ (malīnatun) سِنَّةٌ (sinnatun) لَهُ (lahu)

كَبِيرَةٌ (kabīratun) سَيَّارَةٌ (sayyāratun) بِهِ

(33) The letter ع with two points above it (ة) is pronounced like

(t). For example سِنَّةٌ (sinnatun).

The letter ع (t) is found only at the end of the words (nouns or adjectives).

The letter ع is called in Arabic **Tā Marbūṭa** and the letter

ت is called **Tā Tawīla**.

بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratun) بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratun) أَنْ

آكُلُ (ʿan) آكُلُ (ʾakīlun) (34)

أَمْرٌ (ʾamru) أَخَذُ (ʾakhdu)

هَرَّةٌ آمِرٌ هَرَّةٌ سَمِينَةٌ سَنَةٌ

يَدًا — سَنَةٌ — بَسْتَانًا — سَيَّارَتِي — كَتَبْتُ
يَقْرَأُ — قَرَأَ — آمَرَ — رَأَى

(39) Whenever ء is written above an **alif** and is followed by ا

(thus: اء) or by a vowelless **Alif** (thus: اء), then the **Hamza**

and its vowel are dropped and one **Alif** only is written,

while above it is put the sign called **Madda**, which is

pronounced 'a e.g. أَكُلُ (ʾakulu) instead of أَكُلُ

قُرْآنُ (qurʾānun) instead of قُرْءَانُ

Note: The ا in words like سُورَةُ (surʾatun) and يَتَذَكَّرُ (yabḍiʿun)

is not changed into ا because the ء in

both cases is not above **Alif** (ا).

طَطَطُ (33) (ṭ) ط (ṭiṭatun)

طَبُّ (ṭibbun) طَحَنَ (ṭaḥana) هَرَّةٌ (ḥirratun) (36)

بَقْرَةٌ (bāqaratun) لَطِيفٌ (laṭīfun) طِفْلٌ (ṭiflun)

يَطْلُبُ (ṭalibu) طَلَبَ (ṭalaba)

طَهَّرَ — نَطْلَبُ — طَلَبْنَا — لَطِيفَةٌ — سَمِطَتِ
مَكْتُوبَةٌ — سَمِينَةٌ — بَكَيْتَ — رَبُّهُ — وَسِيلَةٌ

ظ (37) (ẓ)

نَظِيفٌ (naẓīfun) نَظَرَ (naẓara) مَطَرٌ (maṭarun)

طَبِيبٌ (ṭabībun) مَدِينَةٌ (madīnatun) مَا

(38) The letter ظ is an emphatic ẓ sound produced by the tongue

being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ط will be designated in the English transcription by ẓ

(39) The **Tauwin** over the letter ء is not followed by an

Alif (see above page 17 (24)). For example سَنَةٌ (sānatun).

(37) The letter ظ is an emphatic ẓ sound produced by the tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ظ will be designated in the English transcription by ẓ

يُنْظَرُ (yánzǔrú) ظَنَنْتَ (zanántu) يُظَلُّ (yáfáza)

(názárna) نَظَرْنَا لَفْظَ (káfaza)

ظُنَّ نَظَرَ ظُلَّ مَظَلَّ مَلْفُوظٌ

ظَهَرَ مَطْهَرَ لَفْظٌ مَطْلُوبٌ طَارَ

رَبَطَ مَرَبُوطُهُ جَرِيدَةٌ أَخَذَ

قَرَأَ أَنْبَا تَنْبَغَانِ رَبَّهُ رَبَّهُ

مَرَحَبُهُ رَحْمَةُ حَكَمُهُ مَدِينُهُ

ظَلَمُونَ - قَرَأَ - قَرَأَ - مَبْسُوطٌ - تَرَاكَ - طَرِيقُهُ

طُرُقٌ - نَظَرْنَا - نَحْسَةُ - نَحْسَةُ - آكَالٌ

رَبَطْتُ - آكَالُهُ - يَهْرَأَن - حَرَكُهُ - حَرَكُهُ

ظَهَرْتُ - ظَاهِرٌ - لَفْظٌ - يَظُنُّ - ظَلَمْتُ - شَدِيدٌ

هَذَا - لَكِنْ - فِكْرَةٌ - فِكْرَةٌ - كَلْبًا - حَارًا

أَرَبًا - مَدِينَةٌ.

Fourteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

خَيْمَتُهُ (kháymatu) "tent"

خَيْمَتَاكَ (kháymatuka) "my tent"

خَيْمَتُهُ (kháymatuki) "thy (fem.) tent"

خَيْمَتَانَا (kháymatuhā) "his tent"

خَيْمَتَانَا (kháymatukum) "your (masc.) tent"

خَيْمَتَانَا (kháymatukúna) "your (masc.) tent"

خَيْمَتَانَا (kháymatuhúna) "their (fem.) tent"

خَيْمَتَانَا (kháymatuhúna) "their (fem.) tent"

Plural	Singular
"our tent"	خَيْمَتِي "my tent."
"your (masc.) tent"	خَيْمَتَاكَ "thy (masc.) tent"
"your (fem.) tent"	خَيْمَتُكَ "thy (fem.) tent"
"their (masc.) tent"	خَيْمَتُهُ "his tent"
"their (fem.) tent"	خَيْمَتُهَا "her tent"

Note : Nouns ending in ة (tā Marbūta) change the ة

into ت (tā Tawīla), when the Possessive Pronouns are attached to them. For example خَيْمَتِي "my tent"; خَيْمَتَاكَ "your (masc.) tent" etc.

Translate: "our tent"; "thy (masc) tent"; "his tent"; "your (fem) tent"; "their (masc) tent"; "thy (fem) tent"; "my tent"; "her tent"; "your (masc) tent"; "their (fem) tent".

Declinate the following two nouns :

جَرِيدَةٌ	"newspaper"
بَهْرَةٌ	"cow"
جَرِيدَتِي	"my newspaper"
بَهْرَتِي	"my cow"
جَرِيدَتُكَ	"thy (masc) newspaper"
بَهْرَتُكَ	"thy (masc) cow"
etc.	etc.

and also :

أَرَبٌ	"hare"
زُبْدَةٌ	"butter"
مَدِينَةٌ	"town"; "city"
جَرَّةٌ	"jar"
قَبِيلَةٌ	"tribe"
تَلْمِيزٌ	"pupil"
جَمَلٌ	"camel"

(read and translate)

1. كَرَمِي بَعِيدٌ وَكَرْمُكَ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا 2. بَيْتُهُ قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَبَيْتَانِي بَعِيدٌ مِنْ هُنَا 3. مَنْ قَرَأَ وَمَنْ كَتَبَ 1- أَخِي قَرَأَتْ وَأَنَا كَتَبْتُ 4. مَا قَرَأْتُ أَخُوكَ 1- أَخِي قَرَأَتْ فِي كِتَابِي 3. كَلِمَتِي أَسْوَدَ وَكَلِمَتُكَ أَحْمَرُ 6. لِي حَبْرٌ أَزْرَقٌ وَلَكَ حَبْرٌ أَسْوَدُ 7. دَفْتَرِي ثَقِيلٌ وَدَفْتَرُكَ خَفِيفٌ 8. أَخِي قَرَأَ فِي جَرِيدَتِي وَجَارِي كَتَبَ فِي دَفْتَرِي 9. هُنَّ قَرَأْنَ

وَمَنْ كَتَبُوا 10. نَحْنُ كَتَبْنَا وَأَنْتُمْ قَرَأْتُمْ 11. بَيْتَانِي بَعِيدٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَبَيْتَانِكَ أَعْدَمٌ مِنْهُ 12. كَرَمِي قَرِيبٌ مِنْ هُنَا وَكَرْمُهُ أَعْدَمٌ مِنْهُ 13. حَبْرِي أَزْرَقٌ وَحَبْرُكَ أَسْوَدٌ 14. دِيكِي ثَقِيلٌ وَدِيكَهُ خَفِيفٌ 15. هُوَ قَرَأَ فِي جَرِيدَتِي وَهِيَ مَا قَرَأَتْ.

Vocabulary: 51. بَعِيدٌ "far" 52. قَرِيبٌ "near" 53. أَقْرَبُ "nearer than" 54. أَسْوَدٌ "black" 55. أَحْمَرٌ "red" (See above page 30 Notes 1-2)

56. أَثْقَلُ مِنْ "heavier than" 57. حَبْرٌ "ink" 58. ثَقِيلٌ "heavy" 59. خَفِيفٌ "light (in weight)" 60. جَرِيدَةٌ "newspaper" 61. جَارٌ "neighbour".

Note : مِنْ "from"; مِنْ "of"; أَثْنًا "than".

مِنْ "from (of) me"; أَثْنًا "from (of) thee (masc)"; مِنْ "from (of) thee (fem)"; مِنْهَا "from (of) it"; مِنْكُمْ "from (of) you".

Translate: 1. Thy (masc) sister wrote and I read. 2. Where is thy (fem) neighbour? — he is in my vineyard

Conjugate the following two verbs:

"I drank"	شَرِبْتُ	"thou (masc.) drankest"	شَرِبْتَ
"he drank"	شَرَبَ	"thou (fem.) drankest"	شَرِبْتِ
etc.			

"I entered"	دَخَلْتُ	"thou (masc.) enteredst"	دَخَلْتَ
"he entered"	دَخَلَ	"thou (fem.) enteredst"	دَخَلْتِ
etc.			

5. "to ride" (See above page 30 notes 1-2);

(read and translate)

٥. أَرَبِيَّةٌ مِّنَ الْأَرَبِ ۖ وَخَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ ۚ وَلَهَا كَبِيرٌ
 ٦. لِي خَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ ۚ وَلَهَا كَبِيرٌ ۚ وَخَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ ۚ
 ٧. خَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ ۚ وَلَهَا كَبِيرٌ ۚ وَخَرُوفٌ سَمِينٌ ۚ
 ٨. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي أَخِي ۚ وَأَنَا أَكْبَرُ مِنَّا أَخِي ۚ
 ٩. تَلْمِذُكَ كَبِيرٌ ۚ وَتَلْمِذُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي ۚ ١٠. مَن خَرَجَ
 ١١. جَدِّي دَخَلَ ۚ ١٢. أَيْنَ جَدُّكَ وَجَدُّكَ؟ ١٣. أَنِي وَجَدِّي فِي
 بَسْتَانِي ۚ وَأَيُّ وَجَدَّتِي فِي كَرْمِي ۚ ١٤. بَسْتَانِي ۚ وَجَدَّتِي فِي كَرْمِي ۚ

notes 1-2) 63. دَخَلَ "to enter" 64. خُرُوف "lamb" 65. جَدَّ

Translate: 1. Thy (mase) grand-father has written and

my father has read 2. Your (masc.) lamb is father than my lamb 3. Where is our mother? — your (fem.) mother is in my vineyard 4. Thy (fem.) pupil is big and my pupil is bigger than he 5. His grand - mother entered my garden 6. My camel drank and her camel did not drink 7. They (masc.) drank and we did not drink 8. He went out of my house 9. My house is nearer than his house 10. My sister drank and his sister did not drink 11. Her elephant is bigger than my elephant.

(šišuša) (38) (š) (š)



صَلِّيق (ṣaḍīqin) اَكْتَبَ (ʾuktub) فِي (fi) (fi)

(88) The letter **ſ** is an emphatic **s** sound produced by the

tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth,

The letter \mathfrak{C} will be designated in the English transcription by s .

(39) The Arabic word never begins with a vowelless letter, therefore in cases in which the word should begin with a vowelless letter, a **Hamza** with **Alif** are attached to the beginning of it.

For example:  "write!" (instead of )

ride! (instead of زکت).

This **Hamza** with its vowel are pronounced only when the word is at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of it the **Hamza** with its vowel are dropped and the sign is called **Wasla** is put over the **Alif** in place of the **Hamza**. In this case the **Alif** is not pronounced and only serves to combine the following vowelless letter with the last vowel of the preceding word, and then the two words are read as if they were one. For example **قال آكش** pronounce:

الكرام الكبير (alkármu-l-kabiru) (min)

من البيت صار (mīnā-l-bā'iyi) (ṣāra)

qalā-k-tūb "he said: write!"
قَالَ لَهُ اُزَكِّ pronounce:

qala lāhu-r-kāb 'he said to him: ride!



The **Hamza** which is changed in the middle of a sentence in the above-mentioned way into **Wasta** is called in Arabic **Hamzat-i-wastl**.

Note : If the word preceding a **Wasla** ends with a vowelless consonant, then a vowel (generally i) is given to this final consonant. For example قَالَتْ أَشْرَبَ (qāladati-shraba)

"she said : drink !"
 (قَالَتْ) "she said".

In the preposition **مِنْ** "from" the final **نِ** receives the vowel **a** before the **Wasla** of the Article (see below page 57). For example **مِنَ الْبُسْتَانِ** (min-al-bustān) "from the garden".

من
أنتك
In other cases it receives the usual **ا**. For example (mini-b-nika) "from thy (masc-) son".

In the Suffixes  the final  receives the

vowel **u** before the **Wasia**. For example **الْبَيْتُ لِلْجَدِيدِ** *bi-yatuhumu-l-ḡaddidu* "their (plur.) new house" **بَيْتُهُمْ** *bi-yatuhum* "their (plur.)"

your (masc.) new house
بَيْتُكُمْ الْجَدِيدُ (masc.) house

رَأَيْتُمُ الْبَيْتَ؟ "your (masc.) house"; بَيْتُكُمْ "you (masc.)"

saw the house" (أَبْصَحْتُ الْبَيْتَ) "you (masc.) saw".

أَنَا رَأَيْتُ الْكَلْبَ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ

رَصِيفٌ - صَاحِبٌ - أَصْحَابٌ - صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتِ
بَيْتٌ - الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ - الْبَيْتُ الْقَدِيمُ - الْكَبِيرُ
صَارَ - صَارَتْ - صَدِيقٌ - يَصُومُ الْوَلَدُ.

ض (ḍ) (40)

أَرْضُ (ʿardun) ضَرْبُ (ḍaraba) مَضْرُوبٌ

أَضْرَ (ʿadra) ضَحَاكُ (maḍḥun)

مَرِيضٌ (maridun) فَرَضَ (radda) (fardun)

قُرُودٌ (qurudun) قُرُوضٌ (qurudun)

فَرَدٌ ضَرَبْتُ دَرَسْتُ أَرْضِي

يَضْرِبُ - قَبَضَ - أَضْرَ - مَضَيْتُ - مَدَّ - يَضْرِبُ
رِيَاكُ - دُرُوكُ - ضَحَاكُ - يَضْحَكُ - مَرَضَ.

(40) The letter ض is an emphatic ḍ sound produced by the

tongue being set against the palate instead of the teeth.

The letter ض will be designated in the English transcription by ḍ.

لا (lā) (41)

لَا إِلَى (lā ilā) (il'ā) لَأَمِي (lā 'amī) (il'ummi)

الْإِسْلَامُ (al'islām) (al'islām) الْإِلَافُ (il'ia) (il'ia)

لَأَبْسُ (lā abs) (lā abs) (lā abs)

الْإِرْشَادُ (il'irshād) الْإِرْنَابُ (il'ir'nab) الْإِنَاكُ (il'inaḥ)

الْإِنْفُ (il'infa) الْإِنْفِي (il'infi) الْإِسْلَامُ (il'islām) - الْمَدْرَسَةُ (al'madrasa)

بَقَرَتِي - لَأَنِي - لَأَنَّهُ - كَبِيرَةٌ - نَهْمِيَّةٌ - شَرَبْتُ

شَرَبْتُ الْبَقَرَةَ - لَأَخِي الْكَبِيرُ - لَأُمِّي - الْإِخ.

طُرُقٌ - صَرَفَ - صَرَفْنَا - يَصْرُفُونَ - صَرَفَ - يَطْلِمُ

أَعْلَمَ - طَلَبْنَا - يَطْلُبُونَ - رَبَطْنَا - سَهَطَ - يَحْرُكُ
يَطْنُ - شَدِيدَةٌ - يَضْحَكُونَ - مَضْرُوبٌ - صَوِي

(41) When the letter ل (l) is followed by the letter ا (ā) then they are written thus لا. For example لا لَأَمِي (lā 'amī),

لا لَأَمِي (lā 'amī), لا لَأَمِي (lā 'amī).

Seventeenth Lesson

"he has found (he found) me"	وَجَدَنِي
"he has found (he found) thee (masc.)"	وَجَدَكَ
"he has found (he found) thee (fem.)"	وَجَدُوكِ
" " " " him (or: it)"	وَجَدَهُ
" " " " her (or: it)"	وَجَدَهَا
" " " " us	وَجَدَنَا
" " " " you (masc.)	وَجَدَكُمْ
" " " " you (fem.)	وَجَدَكُنَّ
" " " " them (masc.)	وَجَدَهُمْ
" " " " them (fem.)	وَجَدَهُنَّ

When a personal pronoun is the direct object of a verb, it is attached to the verb. For example:

وَجَدَ "he found":

وَجَدَنِي "he found me"; وَجَدَكَ "he found thee (masc.)"; وَجَدُوكِ "he found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدَكُمْ "he found you (masc.)"; وَجَدَكُنَّ "he found you (fem.)"; وَجَدَهُمْ "he found them (masc.)"; وَجَدَهُنَّ "he found them (fem.)".

وَجَدَتْ "she found":

وَجَدْتَنِي "she found me"; وَجَدْتَكَ "she found thee (masc.)"; وَجَدْتُكِ "she found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدْتَهُ "she found him (or: it)"; وَجَدْتَهُنَّ "she found us" etc.

وَجَدْنَا "we found":

وَجَدْنَاهُ "we found him"; وَجَدْنَاهَا "we found her"; وَجَدْنَاهُمْ "we found them (masc.)"; وَجَدْنَاهُنَّ "we found them (fem.)" etc.

وَجَدْتُمْ "you (masc.) found":

وَجَدْتُمُوهُ "you (masc.) found him"; وَجَدْتُمُوها "you (masc.) found her"; وَجَدْتُمُوهُمْ "you (masc.) found them (masc.)"; وَجَدْتُمُوهُنَّ "you (masc.) found them (fem.)" etc.

وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found":

وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found me"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found thee (masc.)"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found thee (fem.)"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found him"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found her"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found them (masc.)"; وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found them (fem.)" etc.

The personal pronouns in the objective case are the same as the possessive pronouns (see above page 22 and page 44).

Note 1: The pronominal suffix of the first person in the objective case is ني, while the suffix of the

possessive pronoun in the first person is ي. For

example وَجَدَنِي "he found me" (the found me) and وَجَدْتَنِي "she found me" (she found me).

وَجَدْتُ بَيْتِي "my house" (house) found".

Note 2: The final الف () in the 3rd plur. masc. (see above page 28 (32)) is dropped before the suffixes. For example وَجَدُوا "they (masc.) found me" and وَجَدُونِي "they (masc.) found me".

"they found") وَجَدُوهُ "they(masc.) found him" etc

Note 3: The final م (m) in me second person plur. masc. is

dropped and in its place ا و is put before the

pronominal suffixes. For example وَجَدْتُنِي "you

(masc.) found me" وَجَدْتُمْ "you (masc.) found"

وَجَدْتُمْ "you (masc.) found him".

Eighteenth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ حِصَانِي؟ هُوَ وَجَدَهُ
- فِي بُسْتَانِي 2. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ أَحْمَدُ بَقْرَتِي؟ هُوَ وَجَدَهَا
- فِي كَرْمِي 3. مَنِ صَرَبَ أَخِي؟ جَارُكَ صَرَبَهُ
4. مَنِ وَجَدَكُمْ فِي بُسْتَانِي؟ جَارُكَ وَجَدَنَا هُنَاكَ
5. مَنِ صَرَبَكُمْ؟ جَارُكَ صَرَبَنَا 6. مَنِ أَكَلَ
- خُبْزِي؟ تَحْنُ أَكَلْنَاهُ 7. مَنِ شَرَبَ حَلِيبِي؟
- تَحْنُ شَرَبْنَاهُ 8. مَنِ صَرَبَكَ؟ جَارُكَ صَرَبَنِي
9. مَنِ كَسَرَ فِنْجَانِي؟ أَخِي أَكَسَرَنِي 10. مَنِ
- صَرَبَ حَارِي؟ تَلْمِذُكَ صَرَبَهُ 11. أَخِي مَا

كَسَرَ فِنْجَانِي. أَخِي كَسَرَنِي 12. أَخِي شَرَبَتْ

حَلِيبِي وَأَخِي مَا شَرَبَهُ 13. مَنِ صَرَبَ جَمَلِي؟

أَحْمَدُ صَرَبَهُ 14. حِصَانُكُمْ أَكْبَرُ وَأَتَمُّ مِنْ حِصَانِي

15. لِي حَبْرٌ أَسْوَدٌ وَلَهُ حَبْرٌ أَخْضَرٌ 16. لَهَا كَلْبٌ

أَسْوَدٌ وَلَكُمْ كَلْبٌ أَبْيَضٌ 17. لِي حِصَانٌ وَحَارٌ

وَلَكُمْ نَورٌ وَجَلٌ 18. فِنْجَانُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فِنْجَانِي.

Vocabulary: 67 وَجَدَ "to find" (see above page 30. Notes

1-2); 68 إِبْرَاهِيمُ "Ibrahim" (proper noun masculine); 69 حِصَانٌ

"horse"; 70 أَحْمَدُ "Ahmad" (proper noun masculine); 71 هَرَّةٌ

"cow"; 72 صَرَبَ "to strike" "to beat"; 73 خَبْرٌ "bread"

74. حَلِيبٌ "milk"; 75 كَسَرَ "to break"; 76 فِنْجَانٌ "cup";

77 أَخْضَرٌ "green"; 78 أَبْيَضٌ "white".

Translate: 1. Who found my book? — my sister found it
2. Who has beaten my pupil? — Our neighbour has
beaten him 3. Who broke my cup? — their (masc.) sister broke
it 4. Your (fem.) ink is black and our ink is blue 5. Her
ink is green and his ink is red 6. Ibrahim is bigger than my
brother 7. Ahmad broke my cup 8. I have an ass and
she has an ass. Her ass is fatter than my ass 9. His horse
is big and thy (masc.) horse is bigger than it 10. Your (masc.)
dog is black and their (fem.) dog is white 11. Her brother
has beaten my ox 12. Where did he find my cup? — he
found it in my vineyard 13. Where did he find my cup? — he
found her. Thou (masc.) hast found me.

Nineteenth Lesson

"I shall write", or "I write"	أَكْتُبُ
"thou (masc.) wilt write", or "thou writest"	تَكْتُبُ
"thou (fem.) wilt write", or "thou writest"	تَكْتُبِينَ
"he will write", or "he writes"	يَكْتُبُ
"she will write", or "she writes"	يَكْتُبُ
"we shall write", or "we write"	نَكْتُبُ
"you (masc.) will write", or "you write"	تَكْتُبُونَ
"you (fem.) will write", or "you write"	تَكْتُبْنَ
"they (masc.) will write", or "they write"	يَكْتُبُونَ
"they (fem.) will write", or "they write"	يَكْتُبْنَ

The Arabic verb has two main tenses which, however, are not real tenses in their European sense. These two main tenses are generally known as Perfect and Imperfect.

The Perfect denotes a finished action, most often referring to the **past**, and the Imperfect denotes an unfinished action, most often referring to the **present** or **future**.

Translate: He will write; we shall write; They (masc.) will write; he wrote (See above page 28); I have written; he has written; I wrote; he writes; she will write; we write; she writes;

we have written; they (masc.) have written; thou (masc.) wilt write; you (masc.) will write; I shall write; they (fem.) wrote; we write; you (fem.) have written; she wrote; they (fem.) will write; I write; they (masc.) write.

The vowel of the second radical letter (see above page 30, **note 1**) of the Imperfect can be **u**, **a** or **i**. For example **يَكْتُبُ** (yaktubu) "he will write" or "he writes"; **يَشْرَبُ** (yashrabu) "he will drink" or "he drinks"; **يَضْرِبُ** (yadribu) "he will beat" or "he beats".

Conjugate as above the two following verbs:

"I shall beat" ("beat") **أَضْرِبُ** "I shall drink" ("I drink") **أَشْرَبُ**

تَضْرِبُ	تَشْرَبُ
يَضْرِبِينَ	يَشْرَبِينَ
يَضْرِبُ	يَشْرَبُ
etc.	etc.

and also: **أَرْكَبُ** "I shall ride" or "I ride", **أَنْزِلُ** "I shall understand" or "I understand"; **أَنْزِلُ** "I shall descend" or "I descend"; **أَخْرُجُ** "I shall go out" or "I go out".

Translate: he will drink; we beat; they (masc.) beat; I drink; you (masc.) will beat; she will drink; thou (fem.) will drink; they (fem.) will beat; we shall drink; thou (masc.) will beat; you (fem.) drink; we beat; I shall drink.

Twentieth Lesson

(read and translate)

1. مِنْ يَكْتُبُ وَمَنْ يَرْسُمُ؟ - أَيْ تَكْتُبُ
وَإِخْتِي تَرْسُمُ 2. هُمْ كَتَبُوا وَأَنْتُمْ مَا كُتِبْتُمْ 3. هُمْ
يَكْتُبُونَ وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَكْتُبُونَ 4. هُنَّ شَرِبْنَ وَأَنْتِ
مَا شَرِبْتِ 5. هُنَّ يَشْرَبْنَ وَأَنْتِ لَا تَشْرَبِينَ
6. بِهَرْتِي تَشْرَبُ الْآنَ وَبِهَرْتُكَ لَا تَشْرَبُ 7. أَيْنَ
تَكْتُبُ فَاطِمَةُ؟ - هِيَ تَكْتُبُ فِي دَفْتَرِي 8. صَالِحُ
كَتَبَ الْآنَ وَأَنَا مَا كُتِبْتُ 9. أَيْنَ تَوَكَّتَ
نُوزِي؟ - تَوَكَّكُنْهُ فِي بُسْتَانِي 10. شَاكِرُ تَرَكَ كِتَابِي
فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 11. مَنْ فَتَحَ كِتَابِي؟ - تَلِيدِي فَتَحَهُ
12. لِي مَائِدَةٌ وَكُرْسِيٌّ وَلَكَ مَائِدَةٌ وَبَنُوكُ
13. مَائِدَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي 14. أَيْنَ أَخِي أَحْمَدُ؟ -
هُوَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 15. أَخِي فَاطِمَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا
أَكْبَرُ مِنْكَ 16. مَنْ فَتَحَ كِتَابِي؟ - أَنَا مَا فَتَحْتُهُ.
فَتَحَهُ تَلِيدُكَ شَاكِرُ 19. هِيَ تَخْرُجُ وَأَنْتِ لَا

تَخْرُجِينَ 20. أَنْتَ تَرْسُمُ وَهُوَ لَا يَرْسُمُ 21. إِبْرَاهِيمُ
يَكْتُبُ وَفَاطِمَةُ لَا تَكْتُبُ 22. أَنْتُمْ تَخْرُجُونَ مِنْ
بُسْتَانِي وَهُمْ لَا يَخْرُجُونَ مِنْهُ.

Vocabulary: 79. لَا "not" (particle of negation before the Imperfect)

80. الْآنَ "now", "at present" (Note: at present pronunciation:

فَاطِمَةُ 81. (See above page 40 (39) and page 32 (31))

"Fatima" (proper noun, feminine) 82. صَالِحٌ "Salih" (proper noun, masc.)

83. تَرَكَ "to leave" (Imperfect: تَرَكْتُ) 84. مَدْرَسَةٌ "school"

85. مَائِدَةٌ "to open" (Imperfect: افْتَحْتُ) 86. مَائِدَةٌ "table"

87. كُرْسِيٌّ "chair" 88. بَنُوكُ "bench".

Translate:

1. Thy (masc.) brother wrote and we did not write
2. We shall write and you (masc.) will not write
3. Thy (fem.) table is bigger than my table
4. I have a chair and a bench and she has a table and a chair
5. Where did Salim write? - he wrote in my vineyard
6. His ox is black and her ox is white
7. Your pupil broke my chair
8. Thy (fem.) horse is bigger and father than my horse
9. Where is her brother? - he is in my school
10. They (masc.) will write and he will not write
11. Our sister drank and thy sister did not drink
12. Where is his lamb? - his lamb is in my garden
13. I have written and my grand-father did not write
14. Your (fem.) house is nearer than my house
15. We have an ox and an ass and he has a camel and a cow
16. She has a sister and I have a sister and a brother.

Twenty-first Lesson

ع (1) عَصْعَصُ (2) ('a'i'u)

(i'sma') عَرَبُ مَعَ (má'a) مَعَ ('arabun) مَعَ

(yu'dallimu) مَعِيَ سَمِعْتُ يَعْلَمُ (sámi'a) مَعِيَ

(rd'ā) عَلَيَّ رَأَى (rd'ā) عَلَيَّ رَعَى (3) ('ā'a) عَلَيَّ

(bānā) مَيَّ بَكَى (bākā) مَيَّ

(32) The letter ع is a very strong guttural produced by the compression of the throat and the expulsion of the breath.

The letter ع will be designated in the English transcription by '.

(33) At the end of a word the ā is often expressed by ي

(a) followed by ي without its two points and without Sukun)

For example ثَبِيَ 'the bull'; ثَبَى 'he threw'; ثَبَا 'the bull'.

As soon as this ي receives a suffix, it becomes an ا.

For example اَلْتَأَهُ 'he threw it'; اَلْتَأَهُ 'he built it'.

ي is called in Arabic **Alif Maqṣūra** and also **Alif Disrupti-i-vā**.

سَمِعَ إِلَى رَأَى مَعَكَ حَتَّى
مَعْلُومٌ - يَعْلَمُ - عَرَبِيٌّ - عَرَبِيَّةٌ - مَعْلَمٌ - صَنِيعٌ
صَنَعْتُ - صِنَاعَةٌ - قَلَّ - عَدَدٌ - مُسْتَعْمِلٌ.

(31) (gh) غ

غَبَرِي (māghribun) مَغْرِبٌ بَلَّغَ

(ghānamun) غَنَمٌ شَغَلَ (bālaḡha)

غَرِيبٌ (bāḡhun) بَلَّغَ غَرِيبٌ يَغْسِلُ

(ghaniyun) غَنِيٌّ (yāghsilu)

رَغِبَ غَرِبَ غَيْرَ يَغْيِرُ مَبْلَغَ

غَيْرٌ - يَبْلُغُ - مُرَوِّفَةٌ - قَلَبَ - مَغْلُوبٌ - قَالِبٌ

يَغْيِرُونَ - يَغْيِرُ - أَشْفَالٌ - قَرَقَ - يَغْرِقُ.

(31) The letter غ has a sound like the gurgling pronunciation between g and r.

The letter غ will be designated in the English transcription by gh.

مُعَلِّمَكَ عَلَى - عَدَيْكَ - عَلَيْنَا - مَعَكُمْ - مَعَنَا - مَعَهُ
غَيْرَنَا - فَعَلْتَ - عَرَبْتَ - فَسَلْتَ - يَدْعُونَا - دَعُونَاهُ
يُخْبِرُنِي - يُخْبِرُنِي - يُخْبِرُنِي - رَغِبْتَ - غَنَمَكَ - غَدَمَكُمْ
شَغَلَ - رَعَى - رَغِبْتَ - رَأَى - رَأَيْتَ - بَنَى - بَنَاهُ - رَأَاهُ
بَنَى - بَنَى - يَبْنِي .

Twenty-second Lesson

(read and translate)

1. إِلَى أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ يَا أَخِي؟ - أَذْهَبُ إِلَى
مَدْرَسَتِي 2. أَيْنَ كِتَابُكَ؟ - كِتَابِي عَلَى مَائِدَتِي
3. أَخِي خَرَجْتَ مِنْ عُرْفَتِي وَأَخِي مَا خَرَجَ مِنْ
هُنَاكَ 4. أَخِي رَجَعَ مِنْ يَافَا وَأَبِي يَرْجِعُ غَدًا مِنْ
هُنَاكَ 5. مُعَلِّمِي ذَهَبَ مَعَ جَدِّي إِلَى مَدْرَسَتِي
6. مَنْ خَرَجَ مَعَكَ مِنْ عُرْفَتِي؟ - مُعَلِّمَكَ خَرَجَ
مَعِي مِنْ هُنَاكَ 7. لِي كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَكَ كَلْبٌ صَغِيرٌ
كَلْبُكَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي 8. أَخِي أَصْغَرُ مِنِّي وَأَنَا
أَصْغَرُ مِنْكَ 9. جَارِي فَقِيرٌ جَدًّا وَجَارُكَ غَنِيٌ جَدًّا

10. جَمَلُكَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِي وَجَارُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
جَارِي 11. أَحَدُ فَقِيرٍ جَدًّا وَسَلِيمٌ أَفْقَرُ مِنْهُ
12. إِبْرَاهِيمُ غَنِيٌ جَدًّا وَشَاكِرٌ أَغْنَى مِنْهُ .

Vocabulary: 89. إِلَى "to" 90. ذَهَبَ "to go" 91. أَذْهَبُ (Imperfect, away)

92. عَلَى (particle of address) 93. يَافَا "Jaffa" 94. رَجَعَ "to return"

95. عُرْفَةُ "room" 96. غَدًا "to-morrow" 97. مُعَلِّمٌ (Imperfect: with him etc)

98. مَعَ "with" 99. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 100. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 101. غَنِيٌ "rich"

102. جَدًّا "very" 103. أَغْنَى "richer than" 104. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 105. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

106. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 107. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 108. أَغْنَى "richer than" 109. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

110. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 111. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 112. أَغْنَى "richer than" 113. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

114. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 115. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 116. أَغْنَى "richer than" 117. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

118. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 119. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 120. أَغْنَى "richer than" 121. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

122. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 123. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 124. أَغْنَى "richer than" 125. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

126. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 127. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 128. أَغْنَى "richer than" 129. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

130. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 131. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 132. أَغْنَى "richer than" 133. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

134. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 135. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 136. أَغْنَى "richer than" 137. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

138. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 139. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 140. أَغْنَى "richer than" 141. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

142. أَصْغَرُ "smaller than" 143. أَفْقَرُ "poorer than" 144. أَغْنَى "richer than" 145. أَكْبَرُ "bigger than"

The order of the Arabic alphabet is as follows :

The letters		Names of the letters		Pronunciation of the letters	
The letters		Names of the letters		Pronunciation of the letters	
ا	'Alif	See page 10 (19), page 19 (26), p. 32 (34), p. 40 (39)	حی	Dād	d. See page 42 (40)
ب	Bā	b.	ط	Tā	t. See page 33 (35)
ت	Tā	t.	ظ	Zā	z. See page 33 (37)
ث	Thā	th. See page 2 (8)	ع	'Ain	See page 52 (42)
ج	Ġim	ġ. See page 25 (28)	غ	Ghain	gh. See p. 53 (44)
ح	Hā	h. See page 26 (29)	ف	Fā	f.
خ	Khā	kh. See p. 27 (30)	ق	Qāf	q. See page 25 (27)
د	Dāl	d.	ك	Kāf	k.
ذ	Dhāl	dh. See p. 18 (25)	ل	Lām	l.
ر	Rā	r. See page 6 (13)	م	Mīm	m.
ز	Zai	z.	ن	Nūn	n.
س	Sīn	s.	ه	Hā	h.
ش	Shīn	sh.	و	Wāw	w. See page 8 (16)
ص	Ṣād	ṣ. See page 40 (38)	ي	Yā	y. See Page 9 (18)

Twenty-third Lesson

"the dog"	الْكَلْبُ (1)
"the big dog" (2)	الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ
"a dog" (3)	كَلْبٌ
"a big dog"	كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ

- (1) The definite article "the" is expressed in Arabic by the syllable **الْ**, which is prefixed to the nouns and the adjectives. For example **الْكَلْبُ** "the dog", **الْكَبِيرُ** "the big", "the great".

- (2) The **Hamza** (see above page 19 (26)) of the article **الْ** is **Hamzat-l-wasl** (see above page 40 (39)). This **Hamza** is therefore pronounced only at the beginning of a sentence. But in the middle of the sentence it becomes a **Wasla** (see above page 40 (39)), which combines the vowelless **ل** of the article with the last vowel of the preceding word and the two words are read as if they were one (see above page 40 (39)). For example **الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ** pronounce: **اَلْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ** "the big house" **اَكَلِ الْكَلْبُ** "the big" pronounce: **اَكَلِ الْكَلْبُ** "the dog ate".

- (3) The indefinite article **a (an)** is expressed in Arabic by the **Tanwin** (see above page 4 (11)). For example **كَلْبٌ** "a dog; **حَاجَرٌ** "an ass".

Note 1: When the noun is qualified by an adjective, the adjective follows it e. g. بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ (baytun kabīrun)

"a big house" and not: بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ (baytun kabīrun).

If the noun is definite, the adjective also must be made definite by the addition of the article **الْ** thus :

الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ "the big house".

The copula "is" or "are" is not expressed in Arabic e. g. الْخَبَازُ فَعِيرٌ "the baker is poor".

Note 2: هَذَا كَلْبٌ "this is a dog";

"this is a big dog"

هَذَا الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ "this dog";

"this big dog"

هَذَا الْكَلْبُ كَبِيرٌ "this dog is big"

Translate: A big elephant; the big elephant; this elephant; this big elephant; the elephant is big; this elephant is big; the hare is fat; the vineyard is large; the house is small; this house is small; the neighbour is poor; the book is big; a big book; this book is big; the big book; this camel is big and fat; a big ass; an ass; the ass is big and fat; the big horse; this horse is fat; this big horse; a fat cock; a big and fat lamb; this lamb is bigger than my lamb; this bread is cheap; this cup is cheap; the cup is cheap; this camel is fatter than my camel, this house is cheaper than my house.

Twenty-fourth Lesson

1. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ صَغِيرٌ. هُوَ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِي

2. هَذَا الْخَبَازُ رَجِيصٌ وَذَلِكَ الْخَبَازُ أَرْخَصُ مِنْهُ

3. ذَلِكَ الْخَبَازُ فَعِيرٌ. هُوَ أَفْقَرُ مِنْ جَارِي 4. مَنْ

كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي عُرْفَتِي؟ زَيْدٌ كَانَ هُنَاكَ وَالْخَبَازُ

أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 5. الْخَلَاقُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَاقَا

وَالْخَدَّادُ أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 6. اخْتُلِكَ كَانَتْ فِي بُسْتَانِي

وَقَاطِئُهُ أَيْضًا كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ 7. أُبِّي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي

يَاقَا وَاخْتِي أَيْضًا كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ 8. أَيْنَ الْكِتَابُ

الْجَدِيدُ؟ الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي فِي عُرْفَتِي

9. مَتَى رَجَعَ زَيْدٌ مِنْ يَاقَا وَمَتَى رَجَعَ الْخَلَاقُ؟

زَيْدٌ رَجَعَ مِنْ يَاقَا الْيَوْمَ وَالْخَلَاقُ أَيْضًا رَجَعَ

الْيَوْمَ 10. مَا هَذَا؟ هَذَا كَلْبٌ 11. هَذَا الْكَلْبُ

الْكَبِيرُ وَأَتَمُّ مِنْ كَلْبِي 12. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ

الْكَبِيرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي وَذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ أَصْغَرُ مِنْهُ 13. هَذَا

الْفِيلُ كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الْفِيلُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 14. مَتَى

رَجَعْتُ مِنْ يَافَا ١- رَجَعْتُ الْيَوْمَ مِنْ هُنَاكَ
 15. جَدَّكَ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرْبِي وَفِي بُسْتَانِي 16. أَيْنَ
 الْكَلْبُ الْكَبِيرُ وَأَيْنَ الْحِمَارُ ١- الْكَلْبُ
 الْكَبِيرُ فِي بُسْتَانِي وَالْحِمَارُ أَيْضًا فِي بُسْتَانِي.

Vocabulary: 103. ذَاكَ "that" 104. رَخِيصٌ "cheap" 105. خِيَّاطٌ "tailor" 106. كَانَ "that house" (that house)
 107. الْيَوْمَ "today" 108. زَيْتٌ "he was" (she was)
 109. خَبَّازٌ "baker" 110. أَيْضًا "also" 111. جَدِيدٌ "new" 112. حَدَّادٌ "blacksmith" 113. حَلَّاقٌ "barber" 114. مَتَى "when?"

TRANSLATE: 1. Thy (masc.) book is cheaper than my book
 2. This camel is big and that camel is small 3. This tailor is
 rich and that baker is poor 4. The barber was in Jaffa and
 the blacksmith too was there 5. This new house is bigger
 than my house 6. That new book is cheaper than my new
 book 7. When did you return from Jaffa?— I have returned
 to-day from there 8. Where is the tailor?— He is in my room
 9. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 10. A big
 garden. The big garden. This big garden. This garden is big.
 That garden. That big garden. That garden is big.

Twenty-fifth Lesson

"a baker visited me"	زَارَنِي خَبَّازٌ (1)
"the baker visited me"	زَارَنِي الْخَبَّازُ
"the house of a baker"	بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ
"the house of the baker"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ
"he saw a baker"	هُوَ رَأَى خَبَّازًا
"he saw the baker"	هُوَ رَأَى الْخَبَّازَ
"from the baker"	مِنْ الْخَبَّازِ (2)
"to the baker"	إِلَى الْخَبَّازِ
"on the baker"	عَلَى الْخَبَّازِ

(1) In Arabic there are three cases: Nominative, Genitive and Accusative.

These three cases are expressed as follows:

c) The Nominative is expressed by the **Tanwin** ~ (un) if the noun is indefinite, and by the vowel ~ (u) if it is definite. Thus:

زَارَنِي خَبَّازٌ "a baker visited me"
 زَارَنِي الْخَبَّازُ "the baker visited me"

- ب) The Genitive is expressed by the **Tanwin** (in) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel (i) if it is definite. Thus:

بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ "the house of a baker"

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "the house of the baker"

Note: The Genitive case causes the preceding noun to be definite as if the article **الـ** were prefixed to it. For example:

بَيْتُ خَبَّازٍ "the house of a baker";

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "the house of the baker" (and not, with a Tanwin, because it is definite).

When the preceding noun is indefinite, the preposition **لـ** must be attached to the following Genitive e.g.

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ "a house of the baker". or:

بَيْتُ مَخْ بَيْوتِ الْخَبَّازِ "a house of the houses of the baker".

- c) The Accusative is expressed by the **Tanwin** (an) if the noun is indefinite and by the vowel (a) if it is definite. Thus:

هُوَ وَجَدَ كِتَابًا "he found a book"

هُوَ وَجَدَ الْكِتَابَ "he found the book"

Note: هُوَ وَجَدَ جَرِيدَةً "he found a newspaper" (see

above page 33 (30)).

- ج) All prepositions are followed by the genitive e.g.:

لِخَبَّازٍ "to (for) a baker"; إِلَى الْخَبَّازِ "to the baker";

عَلَى الْبَيْتِ "from the baker" (See above page 41, Note);

تَحْتَ الْمَائِدَةِ "on the table";

أَلِ الْخَبَّازِ "out of the baker" (the article **الـ** falls out if it is

preceded by the preposition **لـ** e.g. **لِلْبَيْتِ** instead of **لِالْبَيْتِ**)

Note 1: بَابُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ "the big door of the house"

بَابُ الْبَيْتِ الْكَبِيرِ "the door of the big house"

Note 2: If a noun in the possessive case (genitive) belongs to two nouns, it follows the first while the second comes after it (the genitive) with a possessive-pronoun suffix. For example: بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِ وَبَيْتُهُ "the house of the baker and his garden" (the baker's house and garden).

كَرْمُ الْجَدَّةِ وَبَيْتُهَا "the vineyard of the grand-mother and her house" (the grand-mother's vineyard and house)

Translate: The door of the house; the dog or the neighbour; the horse is bigger than the ass; he ate bread and she drank milk; I ate the bread and he drank the milk; this new house is bigger than that house; the book is on the table; the dog is under the table; the neighbour is in the vineyard; your (masc.) house is smaller than this new house; thy (masc.) newspaper is on the table; thy (fam.) grand-father is in the garden.

Twenty-sixth Lesson

1. مَنْ فَتَحَ الْبَابَ الْكَبِيرَ؟ - أَنَا فَتَحْتُهُ.
2. مَا أَكَلْتُ الْيَوْمَ؟ - أَكَلْتُ الْيَوْمَ خُبْزًا وَلَحْمًا.
3. كَلَبُ الْجَارِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلَبِ الْخَلَّاقِ؟ أَيْنَ كِتَابُ مُدِيرِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - كِتَابُهُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْجِدِّ وَ جِدُّ الْجَارِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرَمِ أَخِي جَارُ الْخَلَّاطِ قَيْدِي. هُوَ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ جَارِ الْخَدَّادِ.
6. جَارُ الْخَلَّاطِ قَيْدِي. هُوَ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ جَارِ الْخَدَّادِ.
7. مَنْ زَارَكَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - مَمْلُومٌ وَمَحْمَدٌ زَارَنِي هُنَاكَ. 8. مَا اسْمُكَ وَمَا اسْمُ أَخِيكَ؟ - اسْمِي إِسْمَاعِيلُ وَاسْمُ أَخِي فَاطِمَةُ وَ أَخِيكَ زَارَتْ الْيَوْمَ ابْنَتُ الْمَمْلُومِ. 10. أَيْنَ ابْنُ الْخَدَّادِ؟ - ابْنُهُ فِي بَيْتِ الْخَبَّازِ. 11. أَيْنَ كَلَبُ الْخَالِ؟ - كَلَبُ الْخَالِ تَحْتَ الْمَائِدَةِ. 12. بَيْتُ الْخَالَةِ وَكَرْمُهَا 13. عَمِّي زَارَ الْيَوْمَ خَالَكَ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ 14. عَمِّي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي كَرَمِ جَدِّي. 15. ابْنُ الْمَعْلَمِ الْكَبِيرِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَاقَا. 16. مَنْ شَرَبَ الْخَلِيبَ؟ - أَنَا مَا شَرِبْتُهُ.

- شَرِبْتُهِ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمَ. 17. خَالِي زَارَ خَالَ الْجَارِ فِي يَاقَا. 18. مَا اسْمُ الْخَالِ؟ - اسْمُ الْخَالِ إِسْمَاعِيلُ.
19. اسْمُ أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَاسْمُ أَخِي هِنْدُ. 20. هَذَا ابْنَتُ الْجَدِيدِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بِنْتِي.

Vocabulary: 115. لَحْمٌ "meat" 116. مُدِيرٌ "director"

117. زَارَ "he visited" 118. اسْمُ "name"

119. ابْنٌ "son" (The Hamza in اسْمٌ and in ابْنٌ is Hamzat-i-wasi)

120. سَلِيمَانٌ "ismā'īl" (proper noun, masculine) 121. سَلِيمَانٌ

"Sulaymān" (proper noun, masculine) 122. خَالَ "uncle" (on the mother's

side) 123. خَالَةٌ "aunt" (on the mother's side) 124. تَحْتَ "under (prep.)"

125. عَمٌّ "uncle" (on the father's side) 126. عَمَّةٌ "aunt" (on the father's side).

Translate: 1. This dog is big. He is bigger than that (masc.) dog 2. I have an ass and he has a horse 3. The horse is bigger than the ass and the camel is bigger than the horse 4. Where is the director of the school? - He is in the room of the grand-father 5. What is thy (masc.) name? - my name is Sulaymān 6. I ate bread and meat and she drank milk 7. This camel is bigger and fatter than that camel 8. The barber is poorer than the blacksmith 9. The teacher is in the director's room (in the room of the director) 10. The blacksmith is in the new house 11. This elephant is big. He is bigger than my elephant 12. Where is the tailor? - he is in the house of the baker 13. Where is the new book? - the new book is on the table.

Twenty-seventh Lesson

1. الْأَزْنَبُ حَيَوَانٌ صَغِيرٌ 2. أَخِي كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ وَأَيُّ يَكُونُ هُنَاكَ غَدًا 3. مَا رَأَى أَخُوكَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ - أَخِي رَأَى هُنَاكَ أَسَدًا كَبِيرًا فِي قَفْصٍ كَبِيرٍ 4. أَكُنْتُ الْيَوْمَ - نَعَمْ كُنْتُ الْيَوْمَ 5. هَلْ فَتَحْتَ بَابَ الْكَرَمِ - لَا مَا فَتَحْتُهُ 6. هَلْ يَكُونُ أَخُوكَ غَدًا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ - نَعَمْ هُوَ يَكُونُ غَدًا هُنَاكَ 7. مَا سَأَلْتَ الْجَارَ وَمَا أَجَابَ - سَأَلْتُهُ مَتَى كَانَ فِي بَيْتِ الْخَالِ فَأَجَابَ أَنَّهُ كَانَ هُنَاكَ الْيَوْمَ 8. لِي صَدِيقٌ وَأَسْمُهُ سَلِيمٌ 9. رَكِبْتُ إِلَى مَرْكَبًا فِي الْبَحْرِ وَأُوكَ يَرْكَبُ مَرْكَبًا غَدًا 10. أَخِي رَكِبَ حِمَارًا وَأَخُوكَ رَكِبَ حِمَارًا 11. مَاتَ الْمَلَأَخُ فِي بَيْتِ صَدِيقِي 12. مَنْ رَأَى أَمَّا الْمَلَأَخُ - أَبُو صَدِيقِي رَأَى أَمَّا الْمَلَأَخُ 13. جَدِّي زَارَ أَبَا الْمَسْلَمِ فِي بَابَا 14. إِسْمُ أَبِي الْمَسْلَمِ تَوْفِيقٌ وَاسْمُ أَخِي الْمَدِيرِ زَيْدٌ.

Note : The nouns أَبٌ 'father'; أَخٌ 'brother'; have the following forms before a genitive:

أَبُو الْجَارِ "the father of the neighbour"

أَخُو الْجَارِ "the brother of the neighbour"

رَأَيْتُ أَبَا الْجَارِ "I saw the father of the neighbour"

رَأَيْتُ أَمَّا الْجَارِ "I saw the brother of the neighbour"

إِلَى أَبِي الْجَارِ "to the father of the neighbour"

إِلَى أَخِي الْجَارِ "to the brother of the neighbour"

and also : أَبُوكَ "thy (masc.) father"; أَخُوكَ "his brother";

رَأَيْتُ أَبَاكَ "I saw thy (masc.) father"; رَأَيْتُ أَخَاكَ "I saw

their (masc.) brother"; إِلَى أَبِيكَ "to thy (masc.) father"; إِلَى

أَخِيكَ "to your (masc.) brother".

Vocabulary: 127. حَيَوَانٌ "animal" 128. حَيَوَانَاتٌ "animals"

يَكُونُ "to be" 129. كَانَ "he was" 130. غَدًا "to-morrow"

رَأَى "he will be" or "he is" 131. قَفْصٌ "cage"

سَأَلَ "saw" 132. أَسَدٌ "lion" 133. قَفْصٌ "cage"

هَلْ "or" 134. لا "no" 135. نَعَمْ "yes" 136. لا "no"

137. سَأَلَ "to ask" (imperfect) 138. أَجَابَ "he answered"
 139. إِنْ "that" 140. أُنْ "and then" (see page 70 note 2) 141. صَدِيقٌ "that thou (mass.); أَنَّهُ "that he" etc.)
 142. رَكِبَ "to ride"; "to sail"; "to navigate"
 143. مَرْكَبٌ "a ship" (Note: رَكِبَ جَارًا عَلَى جَارٍ "a sea" and not: رَكِبَ (فِي مَرْكَبٍ) عَلَى جَارٍ
 144. بَحْرٌ "a sea"
 145. مَاتَ "he died" 146. مَلَّاحٌ "sailor"; "mariner".

Translate: 1. Where is the brother of the director? — he is in this garden 2. I opened the door of the room 3. Where is my friend? — thy (mass.) friend is in the room of the grand-father. 4. Their (mass.) father was to-day in the school 5. Her father rode an ass and her brother rode a horse. 6. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the father of the teacher 7. Who saw the brother of the tailor? — the brother. of the blacksmith saw the brother of the tailor 8. The big lion is in a large cage 9. Has he written to-day? — yes, he has (written) 10. Did he open the door of the room? — yes, he opened.

Twenty-eighth Lesson

حَارِسُ الْأَسَدِ

كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ وَرَأَى
 هُنَاكَ أَسَدًا فِي قَفَصٍ كَبِيرٍ. فَسَأَلَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَارِسَ
 الْأَسَدِ: هَلْ أَنْتَ حَارِسُ هَذَا الْأَسَدِ الْكَبِيرِ؟

فَأَجَابَ الْحَارِسُ: نَعَمْ
 — وَمَنْ يَنْظِفُ الْقَفَصَ؟ — أَنَا.
 — أَلَا تَخَافُ مِنَ الْأَسَدِ؟ — لَا.
 — وَكَيْفَ ذَلِكَ؟ — وَقْتُمَا أَنْظِفُ هَذَا الْقَفَصَ يَكُونُ
 الْأَسَدُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْقَفَصِ وَقْتُمَا أَنْظِفُ ذَلِكَ الْقَفَصَ
 يَكُونُ الْأَسَدُ فِي هَذَا الْقَفَصِ.
 أَسْأَلُكَ: مَنْ كَانَ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ؟ مَا رَأَى
 إِبْرَاهِيمُ فِي حَدِيثَةِ الْجَيَّوَانَاتِ؟ مَنْ يَنْظِفُ قَفَصَ
 الْأَسَدِ؟ لِمَاذَا لَا يَخَافُ الْحَارِسُ؟

أَحْمَدُ وَالْمَلَّاحُ

سَأَلَ أَحْمَدُ مَلَّاحًا: أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَ؟ — فَأَجَابَ
 الْمَلَّاحُ: فِي مَرْكَبٍ كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ.
 وَأَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُّكَ؟ — هُوَ أَيْضًا مَاتَ فِي مَرْكَبٍ
 كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ فِي الْبَحْرِ.
 — وَلَا تَخَافُ أَنْ تَرْكَبَ مَرْكَبًا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟

فَقَالَ الْتَّلَاحُ: أَيْنَ مَاتَ أَبُوكَ؟ - عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

- وَجَدَكَ؟ - عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ.

- وَأَنْتَ لَا تَخَافُ أَنْ تَتَلَامَ عَلَى الْفِرَاشِ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟
اسْغَلَّةٌ: مَا سَأَلَ أَحَدُ الْتَّلَاحِ؛ مَا أَجَابَ الْتَّلَاحُ؛
أَيْنَ مَاتَ جَدُّ الْتَّلَاحِ؛ مَا سَأَلَ الْتَّلَاحِ أَحَدَهُ،

Vocabulary: 147. نَظَّفَ "to clean
أَلَّا" "shall clean" or "I clean" 149. خَافَ "to fear" (أَلَّا أَنْظِفَ؟)

وَقْتُ 151. كَيْفَ؟ "how?" 150. يَخَافُ "does he not fear?"

أَلَّا سَمِعَ إِلَى 152. "question" (plural, "while"; "during the time that")
أَسْئَلَةً 153 (and also: لِمَ "why?" ; "wherefore?"

أَنَا أَنَامَ "I shall sleep" or: "I sleep" 154. فِرَاشٌ "bed", "mattress" 155. نَامَ "to sleep"

Note 1: كَانَ يَرْكَبُهُ is to be translated:
"in a ship that he sailed".

Note 2: The difference between وَ and فَ is that وَ joins two

words or independent sentences, while فَ indicates a development in the

narrative e.g. أَكَلَ فَشَرِبَ "he ate and then he drank";

بَشِيَ أَكَلَ وَشَرِبَ "he ate and drank".

In this sentence we do not know if he ate before and then drank, or the contrary.

فَ is also used to join two sentences when there is a change of subject

Twenty-ninth Lesson

"the book"	الْكِتَابُ (alkitābu)
"the big book"	الْكِتَابُ الْكَبِيرُ (alkitābu-l-kabīru)
"the copy-book"	الدَّفْترُ (1) (addafīru)
"the small copy-book"	الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ (addafīru-s-saghīru)

If the article **الْ** is attached to a noun or adjective

which begins with one of the letters ت ن ل ظ ط ض ص ش

pronounced (although it is written) and each of the above letters that follows it, is doubled by **Tashdīd**. For example: الدَّفْترُ

pronounce: الدَّفْترُ الصَّغِيرُ "the copy-book"; pronounce:

الدَّفْترُ "the small"; "the little"; الصَّغِيرُ pronounce:

addafīru-s-saghīru "the small copy-book".

In this case the **ل** of the article **الْ** is written without

Sukūn.

1. هَذَا الدَّفْترُ كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الدَّفْترُ صَغِيرٌ 2. هَذَا

الْكَتَابُ الْكَبِيرُ مِنَ الْعَلِيِّ 3. مَنْ فَتَحَ الشُّبَّانَكَ

الصَّغِيرَ؟ - إِنَّا فَتَحْنَا الشُّبَّانَكَ الصَّغِيرَ 4. إِلَى أَيْنَ

تَذْهَبُ يَا عَمِّي؟ - أَذْهَبُ إِلَى الدَّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ
و. كَانَتْ أُخْتِي فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 6. ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى
السُّوقِ فِي الصَّبَاحِ وَرَجَعْتُ مِنْ هُنَاكَ فِي الْمَسَاءِ
7. كَانَ أَبُو سَالِمٍ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ 8. مَا
شَرَبْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ وَمَا شَرَبْتُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ -
شَرَبْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ فَنَجَّانَ حَلِيبٍ وَبَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ شَرَبْتُ
فَنَجَّانَ قَهْوَةٍ 9. هَذَا التِّلْمِيزُ اكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْمِيزِ
اِخْتِي 10. أَيْنَ الثَّوْرُ السَّعِينُ؟ - الثَّوْرُ السَّعِينُ فِي
بُسْتَانِ النَّجَّارِ 11. رَأَى شَاكِرٌ عُصْفُورًا جَمِيلًا عَلَى
الشَّجَرَةِ 12. أَخِي شَرَبَ فَنَجَّانَ قَهْوَةٍ وَعَمِّي
شَرَبَ حَلِيبًا 13. أَيْنَ عُصْفُورٌ مُحَمَّدٌ؟ - عُصْفُورُهُ
فِي قَفْصِ صَدِيقٍ 14. لِي تَعَلَبٌ وَأَزْنَبٌ وَلَاكُ
كَلْبٌ وَخَرْمُوفٌ 15. أَيْنَ الْمُصْغُورُ الصَّغِيرُ؟ -
الْمُصْغُورُ الصَّغِيرُ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ 16. أَيْنَ الْكَرْمُوسِي
الْجَدِيدُ؟ - الْكَرْمُوسِي الْجَدِيدُ تَحْتَ الشَّجَرَةِ.

Vocabulary: 156. "fox" 157. "shop" 158. "market" 159. "morning" 160. "evening"

161. "before" (prep.) 162. "after" (prep.) 163. "midday" (الظُّهْر) 164. "fore-noon", "after-noon"

165. "coffee" 166. "carpenter" 167. "bird" 168. "beautiful", "pretty" 169. "tree"

Translate: 1. I drank a cup of coffee and my sister drank milk 2. My brother was in the new shop 3. My grand-father was in the school and returned from there in the after-noon 4. Her sister was in the market in the morning 5. Where is the small bird? - it is on the tree in the garden 6. I have a fox and he has a fox 7. This fox is fatter than that fox 8. This ox is bigger than that ox 9. Where is your (masc.) pupil? - he is in the room of the grand-father 10. Where is the house of the tailor? - the house of the tailor is in the market 11. Where is the carpenter? - the carpenter is in the garden of the baker 12. This carpenter is poorer than that carpenter 13. This bird is bigger than that bird 14. My brother was in the school in the morning and my sister was there in the after-noon.

Thirtieth Lesson

أمثلة

1. كَلْبٌ جَيِّدٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَسَدٍ مَيِّتٍ
2. عَدُوٌّ عَاقِلٌ خَيْرٌ مِنْ صَدِيقٍ جَاهِلٍ
3. عُصْفُورٌ فِي الْيَدِ وَلَا عَصْرَةٌ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ
4. سَلَامَةٌ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي حِفْظِ اللِّسَانِ

تعليم وتلميذة الرسول

قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ لِسَلِيمٍ : ارْسُم يَا سَلِيمُ عَلَى الْوُفَّحِ
جَارًا زَكَاةً وَلَدًا. فَرَسَمَ سَلِيمٌ عَلَى الْوُفَّحِ جَارًا
وَمَا رَسَمَ الْوَلَدَ.

الْمُعَلِّمُ : وَأَيْنَ الْوَلَدُ ؟ - سَلِيمٌ : نَزَلَ يَا مُعَلِّمِي.
اسْأَلْهُ : مَا قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ لِسَلِيمٍ ؟ مَا رَسَمَ سَلِيمُ ؟
مَا سَأَلَ الْمُعَلِّمُ سَلِيمًا ؟ مَا أَجَابَ سَلِيمُ ؟

Vocabulary: 169. مَثَلٌ (plural: أَمْثَالٌ) "example";

170. حَيٌّ "alive" 171. طَيِّبٌ "good" 172. مَيِّتٌ "dead" 173. عَدُوٌّ "enemy",

174. "foe" 175. جَاهِلٌ "ignorant", "foolish"

176. يَدٌ "hand" 177. عَشْرَةٌ "ten" 178. سَلَامَةٌ "security",

179. "safety" 180. حِفْظٌ "keeping"

181. لِسَانٌ "tongue", "language" 182. رَسَامٌ "draughtsman"

183. اِرْسُمْ imperative of رَسَمَ 184. لَوْحٌ "blackboard"

185. نَزَلَ "to descend".

Thirty-first Lesson

"a big brother"	أَخٌ كَبِيرٌ
"a big sister"	أُخْتُ كَبِيرَةٌ
"a new book"	كِتَابٌ جَدِيدٌ
"a new newspaper"	جَرِيدَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
"a clean hand"	يَدٌ نَظِيفَةٌ

In Arabic there are two genders: masculine and feminine.

Normally the male is masculine and the female is feminine

e. g. أَبٌ "father", أُمٌّ "mother".

But in Arabic the genders in grammar must not be connected with the sexes: things without life, and without sex are still treated as masculine or feminine.

The nouns which denote inanimate things are feminine:

1) when they end in ة. For example: جَرِيدَةٌ "a newspaper";

سَفِينَةٌ "a ship".

2) when they are names of lands and cities. For example:

مِصْرٌ "Egypt", يَاكُوفَا "Jaffa".

3) when they denote the parts of the body which are in pairs.

For example: يَدٌ "hand", رِجْلٌ "foot", عَيْنٌ "eye" etc.

Note: The following nouns are feminine without a special ending:

أَرْضٌ "earth", بَيْتٌ "well", حَرْبٌ "war", خَمْرٌ "wine".

دَارٌ "house", رِيحٌ "wind", شَمْسٌ "sun".

If the noun is feminine, the descriptive adjective which follows it must be feminine also, the feminine being usually formed by adding the ending ة to the masculine. For example:

(كِتَابٌ نَظِيفٌ) "a clean room" عُرْفَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
(بَيْتٌ صَغِيرٌ) "a small ship" سَفِينَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ

1. مَتَى طَلَعَ أَخُوكَ الْجَبَلُ وَمَتَى نَزَلَ مِنْهُ؟
- أَخِي طَلَعَ الْجَبَلَ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ 2. مَا أَكَلَ أَخُوكَ
وَمَا أَكَلْتَ اخْتُكَ؟ - أَخِي أَكَلَ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً جُبْنِي 3. أَيْنَ
لَحْمٌ وَأَخْتِي أَكَلَتْ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً جُبْنِي 4. لَجَدْتِي هَرَّةٌ
هَرَّةٌ خَالَتِي؟ - هِيَ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ 5. هَذِهِ الْيَدُ
وَقَرْدٌ. الْقَرْدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْمِرَّةِ 6. هَذِهِ الْجِلْدُ نَظِيفَةٌ
وَتِلْكَ الْجِلْدُ وَسِخَةٌ 7. مَنْ أَخَذَ جَرِيدَةَ الْمُسْلِمِ؟
- لَا أَعْرِفُ مَنْ أَخَذَهَا 8. هَلْ تَعْرِفُ إِنَّا سَلَامٌ؟ - لَا
لَا أَغْرِفُهُ 9. مَنْ رَفَعَ هَذِهِ الْجُرِيدَةَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ؟ -

- أَنَا رَفَعْتُهَا 10. وَجَدْتُ أَخِي جُوزَةً عَلَى الْأَرْضِ وَرَفَعَهَا
11. سَلِمَ رَفَعَ هَذِهِ الْجُوزَةَ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ 12. أَيْنَ
جَرِيدَةُ أَخِي؟ - أَخَذَهَا إِبْرَاهِيمُ وَوَضَعَهَا عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ
الْكَبِيرَةِ 13. أَيْنَ أَخِي الصَّغِيرُ؟ - هُوَ فِي النَّابَةِ
14. أَخُوكَ يَلْعَبُ مَعَ أَخِي فِي النَّابَةِ 15. لَعِبَ
أَحْمَدُ مَعَ أَخِي فِي النَّابَةِ.

Vocabulary: 186. طَلَعَ "to mount", "to rise", "to go up"

جَبَلٌ 187. "mountain", "mount" 188. قِطْعَةٌ "a piece" 189. جُبْنٌ

"cheese" 190. قَرْدٌ "cat" 191. هَرَّةٌ "a she-cat" 192. لَحْمٌ "meat";

"monkey" 193. هَذِهِ "this (fem.)" 194. تِلْكَ "that (fem.)"

(that cow)" تِلْكَ الْبَقْرَةُ "this cow", هَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ

195. رَجُلٌ "clean" 196. نَظِيفٌ "dirty" 197. رَجُلٌ "that (fem.)"

198. أَخَذَ "to take" 199. عَرَفَ "to know" (Imperf. (أَعْرِفُ

200. رَفَعَ "to lift up" (Imperf. (أَرْفَعُ "earth", "land"

202. جُوزَةٌ "nut" 203. وَضَعَ "to lay", "to put" 204. غَابَةُ "forest"

205. لَعِبَ "to play" (Imperf. (لَعَبٌ).

Translate: 1. This school is small and that school is big 2. Where is the she-cat of the sister? — her she-cat is in that room 3. This room is big and that room is small 4. Does thy (masc.) brother know where is the director of this school? — no, he does not know where he is 5. This foot is clean and that foot is dirty 6. The room of the sister is clean and the room of the brother is dirty 7. This cow is fat 8. That dog is bigger than this dog 9. That cow is big and this cow is small 10. Who was in this room and who was in that room? — Thy (masc.) brother was in this room and his brother was in that room.

Thirty-second Lesson

A

"two big asses"	١) حَمَارَانِ كَبِيرَانِ	حَمَارٌ كَبِيرٌ
"the two big asses"	الْحَمَارَانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ	"a big ass"
"these two big asses"	هَذَانِ الْحَمَارَانِ	
"two big cows"	٢) بَقَرَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ	بَقَرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
"these two cows"	هَئَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ	"a big cow"

(1) There are three numbers in Arabic: Singular, Dual (which denotes the number **two** of things) and Plural (see below page 90).

The Dual is expressed by adding of the termination **انِ** to the singular, thus:

الْكَلْبَانِ (كَلْبٌ "a dog") "two dogs", كَلْبَانِ "the two dogs", كَبِيرَانِ كَبِيرَانِ "two big dogs", هَذَانِ الْكَلْبَانِ "these two dogs".

(2) Nouns ending in ة (Tā Marbūṭa see above 31 (33)) change the ة

بَقَرَتَانِ into بَقَرَتَانِ (Tā Tawīla) before the Dual-termination e. g. **two big cows** (بَقَرَةٌ "a cow") بَقَرَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ "two big cows", هَئَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ "these two cows".

B

"the possessor of two asses" (1)	صَاحِبُ حَمَارَيْنِ كَبِيرَيْنِ
"from these two asses"	مِنْ هَؤُلَاءِ الْحَمَارَيْنِ
"on these two cows"	عَلَى هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ
"I saw the two big asses"	رَأَيْتُ الْحَمَارَيْنِ الْكَبِيرَيْنِ
"I saw these two cows"	رَأَيْتُ هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ

1) The Dual takes the termination **انِ** for the Nominative and the

termination **َيْنِ** for both the Genitive and the Accusative

(see above lesson 25) e. g.:

الْكَلْبَانِ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ "the two dogs are in the garden"

صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتَيْنِ "the possessor of the two houses"

رَأَيْتُ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "in the two houses"

رَأَيْتُ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "I saw the two cows"

رَأَيْتُ هَؤُلَاءِ الْبَقَرَتَيْنِ "I saw these two cows"

C

"the two asses of the baker"	حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ (1)
"the two big asses of the baker"	حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ الْكَبِيرَانِ
"his two asses"	حَمَارَاهُ
"his two big asses"	حَمَارَاهُ الْكَبِيرَانِ
"on the two asses of my brother"	عَلَى حَمَارَيَّ أَخِي
"from thy (masc.) two asses"	مِنْ حَمَارَيْكَ
"I saw thy (masc.) two asses"	رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيْكَ

(1) The final (ni) of the Dual-termination falls out when the Dual is followed by the Genitive. For example:

حَمَارَا الْخَبَّازِ "the **two** asses of the baker"

فِي بُسْتَانِي أَخِي "in the **two** gardens of my brother"

رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيَّ أَخِي "I saw the **two** asses of my brother"

بَقَرَتَا الْخَبَّازِ الْكَبِيرَتَانِ "the **two** big cows of the baker"

(see above page 63, note 1).

and also: حَمَارَاكَ "thy (masc.) **two** asses";

حَمَارَاهُ الْكَبِيرَانِ "his **two** big asses";

رَأَيْتُ حَمَارَيْكَ "I saw thy (masc.) **two** asses";

Note 1: كَتَبْتُمَا "you (masc. and fem.) **two** have written" (see above page 28).

كَتَبَا "they (masc.) **two** have written" (see above).

كَتَبَتَا "they (fem.) **two** have written" (see above).

Note 2: تَكْتُبَانِ "you (masc. and fem.) **two** will write" or: "you **two** write" (see above page 48).

يَكْتُبَانِ "they (masc. and fem.) **two** will write" or: "they **two** write".

For the first person there is no special Dual form e. g. كَتَبْنَا "we **two** have written" or: "we

(more than two) have written" (see above p. 28), نَكْتُبُ

"we **two** shall write" or: "we (more than two) shall write" (see above page 48).

Note 3: لَكُمَا "you (masc. and fem.) **two** have" (see above page 15).

لَهُمَا "they (masc. and fem.) **two** have".

لَكَمَا "your (Dual masc. and fem.) book".

لَهُمَا "their (Dual masc. and fem.) book" (see above page 22).

Thirty-third Lesson

1. لِي ثَوْرَانِ كَبِيرَانِ وَلكَ بَقَرَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ

2. كَلْبَا أَخِي كَبِيرَانِ وَ كَلْبَا جَدِّي صَغِيرَانِ 3. بَقَرَتَاكَ

صَبَا ثَانٍ وَبَقَرَتَاهُ كَبِيرَتَانِ ٤. أَخِي قَسَمَ قِطْمَةً
 الْجَبْنِ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ. هُوَ أَكَلَ الْقِسْمَ الْأَوَّلَ وَأَخْتِي
 أَكَلَتِ الْقِسْمَ الْآخَرَ ٥. اشْتَرَيْتُ الْيَوْمَ بَقَرَتَيْنِ.
 بَقَرَةً وَاحِدَةً قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ وَبَقَرَةً وَاحِدَةً بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ.
 الْبَقَرَةُ الْأُولَى صَغِيرَةٌ وَالْآخَرَى كَبِيرَةٌ ٦. هَذَا
 الْخَطِيطُ كَبِيرُ السِّنِّ. هُوَ أَكْبَرُ سِنًّا مِنْ ذَلِكَ
 الْخَطِيطِ ٧. هَذَانِ الْكُتَّابَانِ صَغِيرَانِ وَهَئَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ
 كَبِيرَتَانِ ٨. الْخُبْزُ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي السُّوقِ
 الْجَدِيدِ أَزْخَصُ مِنَ الْخُبْزِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي
 الْمَدِينَةِ ٩. مَنْ قَلَعَ الْجُوزَةَ الَّتِي كَانَتْ عَلَى
 الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَتِي وَمَنْ أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا ١٠. سَلِّمْ فَلَمَّا
 وَأَكَلَ لَبَّهَا ١١. هَئَانِ الْجَرِيدَتَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
 كَرْمِي أَخِي ١٢. هَئَانِ الْحَمَارَانِ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ
 جَرِيدَتِي زَيْدٍ ١٣. لَنَا كَرْمَانِ وَلَكُمْ بَيْتَانِ.

Vocabulary: 206 قَسَمَ "to divide" (Imperf) (يَقْسِمُ)

207 آخرٌ "other" 209. (أُولَى) "first" (fem) 208 أولٌ "first" (fem) قَسَمَ "to divide"

(fem) 210. اشْتَرَيْتُ "he bought" (اشْتَرَى) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 210. اشْتَرَيْتُ "he bought"

211. وَاحِدٌ "one" (fem) 212. سِنٌ "age", "tooth"

213. أَكْبَرُ سِنًّا مِنْ "older than" 214. هَذَانِ "these two" (fem) 215. هَئَانِ "who"

(fem) 216. قَلَعَ "to split" 217. لَبٌ "marrow", "core"

(fem) 218. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 219. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 220. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 221. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 222. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 223. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 224. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 225. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 226. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 227. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 228. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 229. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 230. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 231. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 232. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 233. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 234. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 235. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 236. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 237. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 238. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 239. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 240. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 241. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

(fem) 242. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it" (أَكَلَ) (أَخْرَى) (fem) 243. أَكَلَ لَبَّهَا "he ate the marrow of it"

Thirty-fourth Lesson

١. قَسَمَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ قِطْمَةَ اللَّحْمِ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ. ثُمَّ
 وَضَعَ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ فِي كَفَّةٍ مِنَ الْمِيزَانِ
 ٢. مِيزَانُ أَخِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مِيزَانِ جَدِّكَ ٣. مَا
 فَعَلْتَ بِالْمُسْكِرِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ؟
 - قَسَمْتُهُ أَوَّلًا إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ ثُمَّ وَضَعْتُ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ
 مِنَ الْقِسْمَيْنِ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي عُرْفَتِي ٤. لَا أَخِي

تُورَانِي سَيِّئَانِ وَلِي بَقْرَانِ سَيِّئَانِ ٥. قَالَ أَبُوكَ
لَأُحْيِكَ أَرْسَمَ لِي سَيَّارَتَيْنِ قَرَسَمَ أَخُوكَ سَيَّارَتَيْنِ
6. ذَهَبَ أَخِي وَأَخْتِي إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ
وَرَجَعَا مِنْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 7. أَيْنَ أَخْتِي وَأَخْتُكَ؟
- هُمَا ذَهَبَتَا إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. مِنْ أَيْنَ رَجَعْنَا أَنَا وَأَخِي؟
- أَنتُمَا رَجَعْتُمَا مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ 9. هَذَا الْكِتَابُ
رَخِيصٌ وَذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ أَرْخَصُ مِنْهُ بِهَلِيلٍ 10. أَنَا
شَرِبْتُ قَلِيلًا مِنَ الْحَلِيبِ وَأَكَلْتُ قَلِيلًا مِنَ
الْخُبْزِ وَأَخِي أَكَلَ وَشَرِبَ أَكْثَرَ مِنِّي 11. بَيْتَا أَخِي
الْجَدِيدَانِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي سَلِيمٍ بِكَثِيرٍ 12. أَخْتُنَا
سَلِيمٌ كَتَبَتَا وَفَرَأَتَا الْيَوْمَ كَثِيرًا 13. مَا ذَهَبْتُ
الْيَوْمَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ لِأَنَّ أَبِي مَرِيضٌ 14. أَخِي مَا
ذَهَبَ الْيَوْمَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ لِأَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ 15. مَا
أَكَلْتُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ؟ - أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا وَقِطْعَةً لَحْمٍ

Vocabulary: 218 كُلُّهُمُ "all", "whole"

"every" كُلُّ الْبَيْتِ (the whole house) -

or: أَلْبَيْتُ كُلُّهُمُ makes the next noun to be in the genitive e. g. كُلُّ

220 مِيزَانٌ "balance", 221 كِفَّةٌ "a scale of a balance",

222 فَعَلَ "to do", 223 بِ "with", "by", "in", (يَ) "with me",

أَوْ لَا 224 سُكَّرٌ "sugar", 225 يَكُ، يَكُ، يَكُ etc. (see above page 15)

"firstly", 226 سَيَّارَةٌ "automobile", 227 هُمَا "they (Dual masc. and

fem.)", 228 أَنْتُمَا "you (Dual masc and fem.)", 229 قَلِيلٌ "a little",

230 أَكْثَرُ (مِنْ) "more than", 231 كَثِيرٌ "much",

"because", 232 مَرِيضٌ "ill", "sick". 233 قَالَ "he said",

(imperfect: يَقُولُ)

Translate:

1. The two dogs of my brother are in the garden of thy (masc.) sister
2. The two big hares are in the vineyard of the uncle (on the father's side)
3. I have two houses and my father too has two houses. His two houses are in the new market.
4. The two cows of my grand-mother are fatter than the two cows of the tailor
5. Where are the two newspapers of the director? - They (two) are on the table in the room of the father
6. The house of the baker and his garden
7. Her two oxen are bigger than his two oxen
8. The two dogs of the tailor and his two hares
9. The two asses of my cunt (on the mother's side) and her two camels
10. He has one ass and two oxen and we have two asses and one ox.

Thirty-fifth Lesson

هَرْتَانِ وَ قَرْنِ

هَرْتَانِ وَجَدْنَا قِطْمَةً جُبْنٍ وَذَهَبًا بِهَا إِلَى الْفِرْدِ
كَيْ يَفْسِمَهَا بَيْنَهُمَا. فَأَخَذَ الْفِرْدُ الْجُبْنِيَّةَ وَقَسَمَهَا
إِلَى فِئْسَيْنِ أَحَدُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْآخَرِ. ثُمَّ وَضَعَ كُلَّ
وَاحِدٍ مِنَ الْفِئْسَيْنِ فِي كَفَّةٍ مِنْ مِيزَانِهِ. فَرَجَّحَ
الْقِسْمَ الْأَكْبَرَ. فَأَخَذَ مِنْهُ قَلِيلًا بِاسْتِنَائِهِ وَ أَكَلَهُ
وَقَالَ: أَرِيدُ أَنْ أَسْأَلِيَهُ بِالْأَصْفَرِ. وَلَكِنْ إِذْ كَانَ
مَا أَخَذَهُ مِنْهُ أَكْثَرَ مِنَ الْأَلْزَمِ رَجَّحَ الْأَصْفَرَ.
فَفَعَلَ بِهَذَا مَا فَعَلَهُ بِذَلِكَ ثُمَّ فَعَلَ بِذَلِكَ مَا فَعَلَهُ
بِهَذَا وَمَا زَالَ يَأْكُلُ حَتَّى رَجَّحَ مِنَ الْفِئْسَيْنِ حَتَّى
أَكَلَ الْجُبْنِيَّةَ كُلَّهَا.

أَسْأَلُهُ: الْهَرْتَانِ مَا وَجَدْنَا؟ إِلَى مَنْ ذَهَبْنَا؟
إِذَا ذَهَبًا بِالْجُبْنِيَّةِ إِلَى الْفِرْدِ؟ مَا فَعَلَ الْفِرْدُ
بِالْجُبْنِيَّةِ؟ فِي مَا وَضَعَ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنَ الْفِئْسَيْنِ؟

إِذَا رَجَّحَ أَحَدُ الْفِئْسَيْنِ، إِذَا أَكَلَ مِنَ الْقِسْمِ
الْأَكْبَرِ، إِذَا أَكَلَ مِنَ الْقِسْمِ الْآخَرِ، هَلْ
بَقِيَ شَيْءٌ مِنَ الْجُبْنِيَّةِ؟

كَيْ يَفْسِمَ / "in order that" 234. كَيْ

"in order that he divide" 235. بَيْنَ "between" 236. "a

piece of cheese" 237. أَحَدُهَا "one of them (dual)" 238. رَجَّحَ

"to outweigh" 239. سِنَّينَ "teeth" (plural: 240. أَرَادَ "to

wish", "to desire" (Imperfect: 241. أَرِيدُ "to make equal"

Imperfect: 242. لَكِنَّ (لَكِنْ) وَلَكِنْ. (أَسْأَلِي: 243. لَأَزِمُ

"but" 243. (followed by a verb) "since", "because" 244. لَأَزِمُ

"necessary" 245. "to cease" 246. "until". حَتَّى

Thirty-sixth Lesson

الْوَلَالَاتِ وَالْجَوَزَةِ

وَلَدَانِ صَغِيرَانِ وَجَدَا جَوْزَةً تَحْتَ شَجَرَةٍ جَوْزِ
وَقَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا: هَذِهِ جَوْزَتِي لِأَنِّي رَأَيْتُهَا أَوَّلًا. فَقَالَ
الْآخَرُ: لَا بَلْ هِيَ لِي لِأَنِّي رَفَعْتُهَا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ.

فَتَسَاجَرُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُسَاجِرَةً شَدِيدَةً. وَبَيْنَمَا هُمَا
 فِي هَذِهِ الْمُسَاجِرَةِ فَإِذَا بَوَلَّ آخَرُ قَدْ تَقَرَّبَ
 مِنْهُمَا. وَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَكْبَرَ مِنْهُمَا سِنًا وَقَالَ
 لَهُمَا: أَنَا أَوْفَى بَيْنَكُمَا. قَوَّفَتْ بَيْنَهُمَا وَبَعْدَ مَا
 سَمِعَ طَلِبَةً كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا فَلَقَّ الْجُوزَةَ وَقَالَ:
 الْفِشْرَةُ الْأُولَى لِيْنِ رَأَى الْجُوزَةَ أَوْ لَا وَالْفِشْرَةُ
 الْآخَرَى لِيْنِ رَفَعَهَا مِنَ الْأَرْضِ. أَمَّا اللَّبُّ فَهُوَ
 لِي جَزَاءُ النَّصَاءِ.

إِسْمُكَ: الْوَلَدَانِ الصَّغِيرَانِ مَا وَجَدَا؟ أَيْنِ
 وَجَدَا الْجُوزَةَ؟ مَا قَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا وَمَا قَالَ الْآخَرُ؟
 مَتَى تَقَرَّبَ مِنْهُمَا وَلَدٌ آخَرُ؟ أَكَانَ هَذَا الْوَلَدُ أَصْغَرَ
 سِنًا مِنْهُمَا؟ مَا قَالَ لَهُمَا؟ بَعْدَ مَا سَمِعَ طَلِبَةً
 كُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا مَا فَعَلَ؟ كَيْفَ وَفَّقَ بَيْنَهُمَا؟

Vocabulary: 248. جُوزٌ "nut" 249. الثَّانِي "the second"
 250. مُسَاجِرَةٌ "quarrel" 251. تَسَاجَرَ "to quarrel" بل "by"

253. شَدِيدٌ "strong"; "violent" 254. بَيْنَمَا "while" 255. إِذَا (holi-
 by a verb) "when"; "if" 256. إِذَا ب "see!"; "behold!"
 257. قَدْ is a particle which is often put before
 the perfect to express the completion or certainty of the action and can sometimes
 be translated "already" but often it is to be left untranslated 258. تَقَرَّبَ مِنْ
 259. (إِذَا ب) "to approach" 260. (إِذَا ب) "to reconcile" (Imperf.:
 261. (إِذَا ب) "to stand" 262. (إِذَا ب) "to hear" (Imperf.:
 263. (إِذَا ب) "demand"; "request" 264. (إِذَا ب) "shell" 265. (إِذَا ب) "as for"; "as to" 266. (إِذَا ب) "reward" 267. (إِذَا ب) "judgment".

Translate: 1. My brother stood between the grand-
 father and the sister 2. What did he hear in the room of
 the director?— he heard there that thou (masc.) art ill 3. My
 sister took the meat and divided it in two parts 4. Where is
 the new book which I bought in the new shop?— thy (masc.)
 sister put it on the new table 5. thy (fem.) two cows are fatter
 than the two cows of my grand-mother 6. His two houses
 are nearer than thy (masc.) two houses 7. I have two new
 books and he too has two new books 8. Where are the two
 asses?— They (dual) are in the garden 9. Where are the two
 new houses of the tailor?— they (dual) are in the new market.
 10. We have two oxen and she also has two oxen. 11. My two
 asses are bigger than the two asses of my brother. 12. When
 did thy (masc.) teacher visit our uncle (on the mother's side)?— he
 visited him in the after-noon 13. Her grand-mother visited
 to-day the mother of the teacher 14. Where did you (masc.)
 learn the Arabic language?— I learned it in school.

Thirty-seventh Lesson

A

"bakers"	خَبَّازُونَ (1)
"the bakers"	الْخَبَّازُونَ
"these bakers"	هَؤُلَاءِ الْخَبَّازُونَ
"the house of the bakers"	بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ (2)
"I saw the bakers"	رَأَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ
"the teachers of my brother"	مُعَلِّمُو أَخِي (3)
"to the teachers of my brother"	إِلَى مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي
"I saw the teachers of my brother"	رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي
"thy (masc.) teachers"	مُعَلِّمُوكَ
"the room of thy (masc.) teachers"	غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِكَ
"I saw thy (masc.) teachers"	رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَكَ

(1) The plural of masculines is formed by adding to the singular the termination **ُونَ** thus: **خَبَّازُونَ** "bakers" (baker)

(2) The plural of masculines has the termination **ُونَ** for the Nominative and the termination **ِينَ** for the Genitive and

Accusative (See above Lesson 32 B. (1)) e. g.

الْخَبَّازُونَ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ "the bakers are in the garden";

بَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ "the house of the bakers";

رَأَيْتُ الْخَبَّازِينَ "I saw the bakers".

(3) The final **نَ** (na) of the plural masculine termination is omitted when the plural is followed by a genitive e. g.

مُعَلِّمُو أَخِي "the teachers of my brother" (and also:

مُعَلِّمُو أَخِي (1) after the و);

غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي "the room of the teachers of my brother";

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمِي أَخِي "I saw the teachers of my brother".

and also: مُعَلِّمُوهُ "his teachers"; غُرْفَةُ مُعَلِّمِكَ "the room of thy (masc.) teachers" etc.

B

"(female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتُ (1)
"the (female) teachers"	الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ
"from the (female) teachers"	مِنَ الْمُعَلِّمَاتِ (2)
"her (female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتِهَا

(1) The plural of feminine nouns is formed by changing **ة**

into (مُعَلِّمَةٌ) (female) teachers (singular: مُعَلِّمَاتٌ) أَيْتَ into

(2) The plural of the feminines has the termination أَيْتَ for the Nominative and the termination اَيْتَ for the Genitive and Accusative e. g.

اَلْمُعَلِّمَاتُ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ "the (female) teachers are in the room";
اَلْمُعَلِّمَاتُ غُرْفَةُ "the room of the (female) teachers";
رَأَيْتُ اَلْمُعَلِّمَاتِ "I saw the (female) teachers".

Note : There are some feminine nouns which take the plural termination of the masculine nouns and some masculine nouns which take the plural termination of the feminines e. g. "years" (singular: سَنَةٌ) (plural: سِنُونَ "animals" (singular: حَيَوَانٌ) (plural: حَيَوَانَاتٌ).

Thirty-eighth Lesson

1. اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ لَا يَشْرَبُونَ خَمْرًا وَلَا يَأْكُلُونَ
لَحْمَ الْخِنْزِيرِ 2. مُعَلِّمُوا مَدْرَسَتِي وَمُعَلِّمَاتُهَا زَارُوا
قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ اَلْجَامِعَ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ اَلْحَدَادِينَ 3. اَيْنَ
تَعَلَّمَ اَخُوكَ اَللُّغَةَ اَلْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ - اَخِي تَعَلَّمَ اَللُّغَةَ
اَلْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي شَارِعِ يَافَا 4. اَتَعَلَّمْتُ

فِي اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ اَللُّغَةَ اَلْاِنْكِلِيزِيَّةَ؟ - نَعَمْ تَعَلَّمْتُهَا
هُنَاكَ 5. مَا هِيَ اَلْجِهَاتُ اَلْاَرْبَعُ؟ - اَلْجِهَاتُ
اَلْاَرْبَعُ هِيَ اَلشَّرْقُ وَالْغَرْبُ وَالْاَيْسَمُ وَالْجَنُوبُ
6. مَا تَعَلَّمْتَ اَلْيَوْمَ فِي اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - تَعَلَّمْتُ اَلْيَوْمَ
اَلْجِهَاتِ اَلْاَرْبَعُ 7. مُعَلِّمُوكَ زَارُوا مُعَلِّمِي اَخِي
فِي اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ 8. اَيْنَ اَخُو اَلْجَارِ الصَّغِيرِ؟ - هُوَ
يَلْبَسُ اَلْآنَ اَمَامَ اَلْبُسْتَانِ وَيَصِيحُ بِصَوْتٍ عَالٍ
9. مَنْ صَاحَ اَمَامَ اَلْبَيْتِ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ؟ - اَخُو اَلْجَارِ
الصَّغِيرِ لَعِبَ وَصَاحَ اَمَامَ اَلْبَيْتِ 10. هُوَ لَا
اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ كَانُوا اَلْيَوْمَ فِي اَلْعَابَةِ 11. اَوَلَا تَكُ اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ
كَانُوا اَلْيَوْمَ فِي يَافَا 12. اَخِي تَعَلَّمَ فِي اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ
اَللُّغَةَ اَلْعَرَبِيَّةَ وَاللُّغَةَ اَلْاِنْكِلِيزِيَّةَ 13. اَيْنَ كُتِبَتْ
اَلْاَنَ؟ - هُوَ اَلْآنَ فِي غُرْفَةِ اَلْجَدِّ 14. اَيْنَ مُعَلِّمَاتُ
وَالْمُعَلِّمَاتُ كَانُوا اَلْيَوْمَ فِي اَلْقُدْسِ 15. اَيْنَ مُعَلِّمَاتُ
هَذِهِ اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ؟ - هُنَّ فِي كَرَمِ جَدِّي.

Vocabulary: 267. مُسْلِمٌ Moslem 268. خَمْرٌ "wine"

269. خِنْزِيرٌ "swine" 270. جَامِعٌ "mosque" 271. حَاقِرَةٌ "quarter (of a town)" 272. تَعَلَّمَ "to learn" 273. لُغَةٌ "language" 274. عَرَبِيٌّ "Arabic"; "Arabian" (fem. عَرَبِيَّةٌ) 275. شَارِخٌ "street" 276. جِهَةٌ (إِنْكِلِيدِيّ) "English" (fem. إِنْكِلِيدِيَّةٌ) 277. عَرَبٌ "side"; "direction" 278. أَرْبَعٌ "four" 279. شَرْقٌ "east" 280. غَرْبٌ "west" 281. شِمَالٌ and شَمَالٌ "north"; "left" 282. جَنُوبٌ "south" 283. أَمَامَ "before"; "in front of" 284. صَاحَ "to shout"; "to cry out" (Imperfect: صَوَّتَ "voice" 286. هَالٌ "high"; "loud (voice)" 287. الْقُدْسُ "Jerusalem" 288. هَؤُلَاءِ "these" (mas and fem.) 289. أُولَئِكَ or أُولَئِكَ "those" (m and f)."

Translate:

1. My son was to-day in the school which is in the Jaffa street
2. Our uncle (on the father's side) was to-day in Jerusalem and my teacher too was there
3. Where is now my small sister? — She plays in front of the mosque
4. This street is longer than that street
5. The bakers were to-day in the garden of the grand-father
6. Who saw the tailors to-day? — I saw the tailors in the afternoon
7. The teachers of this school were to-day in the vineyard of my brother
8. I learned the English language in this school
9. Where did thy (mas.) son learn the Arabic language? — He learned the Arabic language in Jaffa
10. The director and the teachers of this school (in Arabic: The director of this school and its teachers) have returned to-day from Jerusalem.

Thirty-ninth Lesson

الْجِهَاتُ الْأَرْبَعُ

لَمَّا رَجَعَ أَحْمَدُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ سَأَلَهُ أُمُّهُ: مَا تَعَلَّمْتَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ. فَقَالَ أَحْمَدُ تَعَلَّمْتُ الْجِهَاتِ الْأَرْبَعَ. وَهِيَ الشَّرْقُ وَالْغَرْبُ وَالشِّمَالُ وَالْجَنُوبُ. وَقَدْ قَالَ لَنَا الْمُعَلِّمُ إِنَّ الْجِهَةَ الَّتِي تُشْرِقُ مِنْهَا الشَّمْسُ هِيَ الشَّرْقُ وَالْجِهَةُ الَّتِي تَغِيبُ فِيهَا الشَّمْسُ هِيَ الْغَرْبُ وَالَّتِي تَكُونُ عَلَى يَمِينِنَا إِذَا قَابَلْنَا جِهَةَ الشَّرْقِ هِيَ الْجَنُوبُ وَالَّتِي تَكُونُ عَلَى يَسَارِنَا هِيَ الشِّمَالُ.

فَوَقَفْتُهُ أُمُّهُ يَوْجِهَهُ إِلَى جِهَةِ الْغَرْبِ وَقَالَتْ لَهُ: سَمِّرْ لِي الْأَنَ الْجِهَاتِ وَأَشِرْ عَلَيْهَا. فَقَالَ أَحْمَدُ: الْغَرْبُ أَمَامِي وَالشَّرْقُ خَلْفِي وَالشِّمَالُ عَلَى يَمِينِي وَالْجَنُوبُ عَلَى يَسَارِي.

سَأَلَتْهُ: لَمَّا رَجَعَ أَحْمَدُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ مَا سَأَلَتْهُ

أَبْنَاهُ ، مَا أَجَابَ أَحَدُهُ ، مَا قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ ، كَيْفَ وَتَفَنَّهُ أَمَّهُ وَمَا قَالَتْ لَهُ ، مَا قَالَ أَحَدٌ ،

Vocabulary: 290. لَمَّا "when" 291. إِنَّ "indeed"; "verily";

truly" (The sentence in Arabic is often introduced by the particle

which is followed by the subject in the accusative case e. g. إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ

كَبِيرٌ "truly" the house is big") 292. إِنَّ "that" (only after

the verb "to say" For example: قَالَ إِنَّ الْبَيْتَ كَبِيرٌ قَالَ

"he said that the house is big") 293. أَشْرَقَ "to shine"; "to rise"

(Imperfect: أَشْرَقَ "sun" 295. قَابَ "to be absent";

"to depart" 296. فِي "in" 297. يَمِينٌ "right

side" 298. يَسَارٌ "left side" 299. قَابِلٌ "to be in front of"; "to be

opposite to" 300. وَقَفَ "to place"; "to cause to stand" 301. وَجْهٌ

أَشَارَ 302. مَنَى "to name" (Imperative: سَمِّ) 303. اِشْرَافَ

خَلْفَ 304. خَلْفَ "back" 305. خَلْفَ 306. خَلْفَ "behind" (prep) -

خَلْفَهُ خَلْفَكَ خَلْفَكَ خَلْفِي

Fourthieth Lesson

الصدى

كَانَ زَيْدٌ يَوْمًا فِي الْغَابَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ .

وَبَيْنَمَا كَانَ يَلْتَمِسُ هُنَاكَ صَاحَ بِصَوْتٍ عَالٍ : هَا هَا هَا .

فَسَمِعَ فِي الْحَالِ صَوْتًا آخَرَ فِي الْغَابَةِ يَشْوُلُ :

هَا هَا هَا . فَظَنَّ زَيْدٌ أَنَّ فِي الْغَابَةِ وَلَدًا آخَرَ . لِأَنَّهُ

كَانَ لَا يَعْرِفُ مَا هُوَ الصَّدى . فَقَالَ : مَنْ أَنْتَ يَا

هَذَا ، فَسَمِعَ حَالًا الصَّوْتِ الْآخَرَ يَقُولُ : مَنْ أَنْتَ

يَا هَذَا ، فَظَنَّ زَيْدٌ أَنَّ الْوَلَدَ الْآخَرَ يَهْتَزُّ بِهِ فَقَالَ :

أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهَقُ .

فَقَالَ الصَّوْتُ الْآخَرُ : أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهَقُ .

فَغَضِبَ زَيْدٌ وَرَفَعَ صَوْتَهُ وَصَاحَ بِصَوْتٍ

عَالٍ : أَنْتَ جَاهِلٌ أَهَقُ .

وَبَيْنَمَا هُوَ يَصِيحُ فَإِذَا بِأَيِّهِ قَدْ جَاءَ وَقَالَ لَهُ :

إِنَّكَ يَا أَبْنِي لَا تَسْمَعُ إِلَّا صَدَى صَوْتِكَ . فَلَمَّا

بَيَّنَ لِزَيْدٍ أَمْرَ الصَّدى خَجَلَ وَرَجَعَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ .

أَسْأَلُهُ : أَيْنَ كَانَ زَيْدٌ؟ مَا فَعَلَ هُنَاكَ؟ لَمَّا
صَاحَ هَاهَا هَاهَا مَا سَمِعَ؟ مَا ظَنُّ زَيْدٍ؟ مَا قَالَ
زَيْدٌ؟ مَا سَمِعَ بَعْدَهُ؟ لَمَّا ظَنُّ أَنْ الْوَلَدَ يَهْزَأُ بِهِ
مَا قَالَ؟ مَا سَمِعَ بَعْدَهُ؟ مَا فَعَلَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ؟ مَنْ
جَاءَ وَقَتَّمَا كَانَ يَصِيحُ؟ مَا قَالَ لَهُ أَبُوهُ؟ لَمَّا تَبَيَّنَ
إِزِيدٌ أَمْرَ الصَّدَى مَا قَالَ؟

Vocabulary: 306. صَدَى "echo" (الصَّدى) 307. يَوْمٌ "day" (يَوْمًا) 308. مَدِينَةٌ "city"; "town" 309. حَالًا and also: 310. فِيمَا لَحَالًا "immediately" 311. "to think"; "to believe" 312. أَجَاحٌ "stupid"; "foolish" 313. غَضِبَ "to be angry"; "to become angry" 314. جَاءَ "to come" 315. إِلَّا "except"; "only" 316. أَمْرٌ "matter"; "to become clear"; "to be elucidated" 317. بَيِّنَ "to be clear"; "to be elucidated" 318. خَجِلَ "to be ashamed of" 319. بَعْدَهُ "after him"; "after it".

Note: لِأَنَّ "because" - لِأَنِّي "because I" لِأَنَّكَ "because I" لِأَنَّكَ "because I" etc.

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ etc.

Fourty-first Lesson

A

"dogs"	كِلَابٌ	"a dog"	كَلْبٌ
"houses"	بُيُوتٌ	"a house"	بَيْتٌ
"books"	كُتُبٌ	"a book"	كِتَابٌ
"men"	رِجَالٌ	"a man"	رَجُلٌ
"schools"	مَدَارِسٌ	"a school"	مَدْرَسَةٌ

In Arabic there are two kinds of plurals which are generally known as the **sound** (or: the **strong**) and the **broken** (or: the **weak**) plurals.

Sound plural is the plural which is formed by adding the termination **وُنْ** to masculine nouns (see above page 90) and the

termination **أَتِ** to the feminine nouns (see above page 91, B).

Broken plural is the plural which is formed as follows:

1. By internal change such as كَلْبٌ "dog", plural: كِلَابٌ.

بَيْتٌ "house", plural: بُيُوتٌ etc.

2. By internal change and by the addition of a termination,

such as قَارِئٌ "reader", plural: قَارِئُونَ "minister", plural: وَزَرَءٌ etc.

3. By internal change and by the addition of a prefix, such as

أَسْبَابٌ "cause", plural: أَسْبَابٌ "child", plural: أَوْلَادٌ etc.

4. By internal change and by the addition of a termination as **أَسْأَلُ** "question", plural: **أَسْأَلَاتُ** as well as of a prefix, such as **سُؤَالٌ** "question", plural: **سُؤَالَاتُ**.

Note 1: Some nouns have two or more different forms of **broken plural**, such as **بَحْرٌ** "sea", plural: **بَحُورٌ**, **بَجَاجٌ**, **بَحْرَانٌ** and **أَبْحَارٌ**.

Some nouns have both the **sound** and the **broken-**

plurals, such as **ابْنٌ** "son", plural: **أَبْنَاءٌ** and **بَنُونَ**.

Note 2: The forms of the **broken plural** are fairly numerous and usually cause the students some difficulty, though by no means as serious as it might appear at first sight.

The best way is to learn the plural of each noun together with its singular.

B

"big houses"	بُيُوتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (1)	بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ	"a big house"
"big schools"	مَدَارِسٌ كَبِيرَةٌ	مَدْرَسَةٌ	"a school"
"big animals"	حَيَوَانَاتٌ كَبِيرَةٌ (2)		
"these houses"	هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ	هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةُ	
"these schools"	هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ	هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةُ	"this school"
"these animals"	هَذِهِ الْحَيَوَانَاتُ		
		أَيْنَ الْكُتُبِ الْجَدِيدَةِ؟ — هِيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي	
		"Where are the new books? — they are on my table"	

- (a) The **broken-plurals** are treated as feminine singulars thus:

هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these houses are big"

هَذِهِ الْكُتُبُ رَخِيصَةٌ. اشْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ "these books are cheap. I bought them in the shop"

Exceptions are the nouns which denote persons e. g.

هَذِهِ الرِّجَالُ "these men" and not: هَؤُلَاءِ الرِّجَالُ

هَؤُلَاءِ التِّلْمِذُونَ "the diligent pupils"

- 2) When the noun which does not denote persons is in the **sound-plural** it is also treated as a feminine singular e. g.

هَذِهِ الْحَيَوَانَاتُ كَبِيرَةٌ "these animals are big".

Forty-second Lesson

1. أَيْنَ الْجُرَائِدِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ؟ —

هِيَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي 2. أَيْنَ اشْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ الدَّقَائِرَ

الْجَدِيدَةَ؟ — اشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 3. خُذْ

هَذَا الطَّبَاثِيرَ وَارْسُمِ رَجُلًا عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 4. اللُّوْحُ

أَسْوَدٌ وَالطَّبَاثِيرُ أَبْيَضٌ 5. سَفِينَةٌ وَاحِدَةٌ مِنْ

السُّفُنِ الَّتِي رَأَيْتَهَا فِي الصَّبَاحِ قَدْ غَرَقَتْ بَعْدَ

الظُّهْرِ 6. الدُّبُّ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الذِّئْبِ وَالْفِيلُ أَكْبَرُ

مِنَ الدَّبِّ 7. رَأَيْتَ الْيَوْمَ تَلَامِيذَ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
فِي الْغَابَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ يَاقَا 8. مَتَى اسْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ
الْكُتُبَ؟ - اسْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي السَّنَةِ الْمَاضِيَةِ 9. يَكُمُ
بَاعَ الْفَلَاحُ الثَّمَلَبَ وَبِكُمُ اسْتَرَى الْجَمَارَ؟ - الْفَلَاحُ
بَاعَ الثَّمَلَبَ بِلَبَرَةٍ فَلَسْطِينِيَّةٍ وَاسْتَرَى الْجَمَارَ بِلَبَرَتَيْنِ
فَلَسْطِينِيَّتَيْنِ 10. هَذَا التَّاجِرُ وَشَرِيكُهُ فَتَحَا دُكَّانًا
جَدِيدًا فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 11. شُرَكَاءُ هَذِهِ الشَّرَكَةِ
اِغْنَى مِنْ شُرَكَاءِ تِلْكَ الشَّرَكَةِ 12. هَذِهِ الْأَرَانِبُ
أكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْأَرَانِبِ 13. الْبُيُوتُ فِي هَذَا
السَّارِعِ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبُيُوتِ الَّتِي فِي ذَلِكَ السَّارِعِ
14. رَأَيْتَ الْيَوْمَ تَلَامِيذَ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ فِي الْغَابَةِ
الْكَبِيرَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ حَيْفَا.

طَبَاشِيرُ 321. اخُذْ imperative of خَذَ 320. Vocabulary:

(plur.) "ship" سَفِينَةٌ 323. (رجال) "man" 322. "chalk"
(أغرق) imperf. "to drown" 324. غَرَقَ (سُفِنَ)

(ذُنَابٌ plur.) "wolf" 326. (أَدْبَابٌ plur.) "bear" 325.
الْمَاضِي 328. (سَنَوَاتٌ plur.) "year" 327. "how many?"
"how much?" 329. (الْمَاضِيَةُ fem.) "past" 329.
330. "farmer" فَلَاحٌ 331. (ابِيعْ imperf.) "to sell" 330.
332. "merchant" تَاجِرٌ 333. "Palestinian pound" لِبْرَةٌ فَلَسْطِينِيَّةٌ
(مُشْرَكَاءُ plur.) "partner", "companion"; شَرِيكَ 334. (تُجَّارٌ plur.)
335. "partnership", "company"; شَرَكَةٌ and also:

Fourth-third Lesson

1. زَرَعَ الْفَلَاحُ الْيَوْمَ لِفَتَا فِي الْبُسْتَانِ 2. صَاحِبُ
الْبَيْتِ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ وَاسْتَرَى هُنَاكَ مِنَ
الْفَلَاحِينَ ثَبَا بِلَبَرَةٍ فَلَسْطِينِيَّةٍ 3. هُوَ لِأَنَّ التَّلَامِيذَ
مُجْتَمِعُونَ وَأَوْلَايَكَ التَّلَامِيذُ كَسَلَانُونَ 4. هَذِهِ
الْمَدَارِسُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْمَدَارِسِ 5. أَيْنَ تَرَكْتَ
كِلَابَ جَدِّي؟ - تَرَكْتُهَا فِي الْكَرْنَمِ 6. هَذِهِ
الْبُيُوتُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بُيُوتِ ذَلِكَ السَّارِعِ 7. مَتَى
اسْتَرَيْتَ هَذِهِ الدُّيُولَ؟ - اسْتَرَيْتُهَا الْبَارِحَ 8. مَا

رَسَمَ إِنْزَاهِمُ فِي الدَّقْتَرِ الْجَدِيدِ ٢- هُوَ رَسَمَ هَذَاكَ
خَطوطًا مُسْتَقِيمَةً ٥١. هَذَا الْخَطُّ اطْوَلُ مِنْ كُلِّ
الْخَطوطِ الْآخَرَى ١٠. بَنُوا الْجَارِ كَسَلَانُونَ وَبَنَاهُ
مَجْتَهِدَاتٌ ١١. بَنَاتُ أَخِي دَرَسْنَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
وَبَنُوهُ دَرَسُوا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ
١٢. الْفَلَاخُونَ الَّذِينَ خَرَجُوا مِنَ الْجَامِعِ ذَهَبُوا
إِلَى يَافَا ١٣. مِنْ أَيْنَ رَجَعَ الْأَلَامِيدُ الَّذِينَ دَخَلُوا
الْمَدْرَسَةَ الْآنَ ٢- هُمْ رَجَعُوا مِنَ الْغَابَةِ ١٤. مَا
أَعْطَى مُدِيرُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْأَلَامِيدَ ٢- هُوَ أَعْطَاهُمْ كُتُبًا
جَدِيدَةً ١٥. هَذِهِ الدَّقَاتِرُ غَالِيَةٌ. هِيَ أَغْلَى مِنْ
تِلْكَ الدَّقَاتِرِ ١٦. السُّكَّرُ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتُ فِي هَذَا
الْبَيْتِ كَانَ أَغْلَى مِنَ السُّكَّرِ الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتُهُ فِي السُّوقِ.

Vocabulary: 336. زَرَعَ "to sow" (Imperfect: يَزْرَعُ)

337. "turnip", 338. صَاحِبٌ "friend", "owner", "possessor"
الْقُرَى "villages" (قُرَى "village" 339. (أَصْحَابٌ plural:

كَسَلَانٌ 342. دَلِيلٌ diligent 341. "straw" 340. "the villages"
"lazy" 343. الْبَارِحَ and also, الْبَارِحَةَ "yesterday" 344. خَطَّ "line"
كُلُّ الْخَطوطِ 345. مُسْتَقِيمٌ "straight" 346. كَلَّمَ followed by a
definite noun in plural is to be translated "all" e.g. كَلَّمَ
"all the lines", "to learn" (imperf. يَلْمُسُ) 350. قَدِيمٌ "ancient"
"to study", "to learn" (imperf. يَلْمُسُ) 350. قَدِيمٌ "ancient"
"to give" 352. أَعْطَى "who" (relative pronoun, plur. masc.) 351. الَّذِينَ
أَعْطَى الدَّلِيلَ "he gave to the pupil", "he gave him"
أَعْطَيْتُ 1 gave" 353. قَالَ "dear (price)", "precious"
الغَالِي (الغَالِي) أَغْلَى مِنْ غَالِيَةٍ "more precious than".
"the dear", fem. غَالِيَةٍ "more precious than".

Translate: 1. These farmers are richer than those farmers

2. Where did you (masc) buy these new books?— I bought them in the new shop
3. These pupils are lazy and those pupils are diligent
4. The possessor of these houses is rich. He is richer than the possessor of those houses
5. Where are the dogs of the grand-father? — they are (in Arabic: she is) in the garden of the neighbour
6. The pupils of this school have been to-day in the forest and the pupils of that school were there yesterday
7. The new house is bigger than the old house
8. My brother sold his old house and bought a new house

9. I saw yesterday a big bear in a cage 10. The schools in this village are small. They are (in Arabic: she is) smaller than the schools in that village 11. These copy-books are cheaper than those copy-books 12. These new houses are smaller than those old houses 13. These bakers are rich. They are richer than those bakers.

Forty-fourth Lesson

أمثال

1. رَأْسُ الْحِكْمَةِ خِيفَةُ اللَّهِ
2. رَأْسُ الْكَفَلَانِ مَعْمَلُ السَّيِّئَانِ
3. مِنْ كَثْرَةِ الْمَلَاجِينَ غَرِقَتْ السَّفِينَةُ
4. الْأَسْعَارُ وَالْأَعْمَارُ بِيَدِ اللَّهِ
5. رَاحَةُ الْجِسْمِ فِي قِلَّةِ الطَّامِ
6. وَرَاحَةُ الْإِنْسَانِ فِي قِلَّةِ الْكَلَامِ
- هَذَا الْحِمَارُ بِلْدَرَةٍ وَسَرَجُهُ بِلْدَرَيْنِ

الْقَطَارُ الَّذِي سَافَرَ

قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ لِأَحَدِ التِّلْمِيزِ أَنْسَمَ عَلَى الْوُجْهِ
فَطَارًا. فَتَقَرَّبَ التِّلْمِيزُ مِنَ الْوُجْهِ وَأَخَذَ الطَّبَاشِيرَ

بِيَدِهِ وَرَسَمَ عَلَى الْوُجْهِ حُطَيْنِ مُسْتَقِيمَيْنِ وَمَا رَسَمَ الْقَطَارَ.

الْمَعْلَمُ: وَأَيْنَ الْقَطَارُ؟

التِّلْمِيزُ: قَدْ سَافَرَ يَا مَعْلَمِي.

أَسْأَلُهُ: مَا قَالَ الْمَعْلَمُ لِتِلْمِيزِهِ؟ مَا رَسَمَ التِّلْمِيزُ؟
مَا سَأَلَ الْمَعْلَمُ؟ مَا أَجَابَ التِّلْمِيزُ؟

Vocabulary: 354. قَطَارٌ "train"; 355. "railway train" 356. "to travel"; "to make a journey" 357. "beginning"

358. رَأْسُ "head"; 359. "wisdom" (plural: رُؤُوسٌ) 360. "abundance"; "multiplicity"

361. "fear" 362. "rest"; "comfort"; 363. رَاحَةُ "ease"; "life-time" (plural: أَعْمَارٌ) 364. "body"; 365. جِسْمٌ "ease"

366. طَامٌ "food"; "nourishment" 367. كَلَامٌ "speech"; "talk"

368. سَرَجٌ "saddle" (plur. سَرَاجٌ) 369. "current price"; "rate" (plural: أَسْعَارٌ) 370. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 371. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 372. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

373. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 374. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 375. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

376. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 377. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 378. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

379. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 380. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 381. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

382. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 383. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 384. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

385. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 386. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ) 387. "smallness"; "tallness" (plural: أَطْوَالٌ)

Forty-fifth Lesson

الشريك كان

شارك ذبٌ فلاحًا في زراعته وانفق في السنة الأولى أن يأخذ الفلاح ما ينبت تحت التربة والذب ما فوقها

فزرعا ليفتا. ولما حان وقت التقسيم

الفلاح رؤوس الفلت وأعطى الذب الأوراق.

لما رأى الذب أنه مخدوع بهذا الشرط طلب

أن تكون حصته في السنة التالية ما تحت

الترابية وحصته شريكه ما فوقها.

فوافقه الفلاح بذلك وزرعا الأرض ففعا.

ولما حان وقت التقسيم أخذ الفلاح السبيل

والسبيل وترك للذب الجذور التي لا قيمة

لها. فرأى الذب أنه مخدوع في كل حال.

فترك الشركة.

Vocabulary: 369. شارك "to enter into partnership with"

إتفق في 372. حقل field. 371. حقل "sowing", 370. زرع

نبت (imperf) "to sprout", 373. ببت "to grow", 374. تربة

لما 375. فوق "above", "on", 376. تربة "soil", "ground", 377. حان الوقت

378. تقسيم "division" 379. (plural: أوراق) "leaf" ورقت

380. شرط "condition" (plural: شروط) طلب "to ask for",

381. (plural: يطلب) "to desire" (imperf) 382. حصته "share",

383. الأتالي "the following", 384. الأتالي "portion"

385. "to agree to" وافق 386. سيلة "ear of wheat" قنح

387. جذر "root" (plural: جذور) 388. سنابل (plural: corn)

389. حال "state", "condition" 390. قيمة "value", "worth", price

Forty-sixth Lesson

أحمد فقير "Ahmad is poor"	سليم فقير "Salim is poor"
بيت أحمد (1) "the house of Ahmad"	بيت سليم "the house of Salim"
رأيت أحمد "I saw Ahmad"	رأيت سليما "I saw Salim"
في المدارس (2) "in the schools"	في الكتب "in the books"

(1) There are nouns and adjectives with no Tanwin at the end

مَدَارِسُ اسودَ "black"; كَسَلَانُ "lazy"; أَحْمَدُ "Ahmad"; دَفَاتِرُ "copy-books" etc.

e. g. "schools";

These **Tanwin-less** nouns and adjectives have two case-endings only :

a. (u) in the Nominative e.g. اَلْبُسْمَانُ "Ahmad" is in the garden".

b. (a) in both the Genitive and the Accusative e.g. بَيْتُ أَحْمَدَ "the house of Ahmad";

فِي مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةٍ "in a white house";

رَأَيْتُ مَدَارِسَ جَدِيدَةً "saw Ahmad";

رَأَيْتُ أَحْمَدَ "saw new houses"

I saw new houses

(2) When the **Tanwin-less** nouns and adjectives are made

definite by the Article اَلْ or by a possessive suffix or by

a following Genitive, then they have three case-endings e.g.

a. هَذِهِ الْمَدَارِسُ جَدِيدَةٌ "these schools are new".

b. مُعَلِّمُوا الْمَدَارِسِ "the teachers of the schools"

فِي مَدَارِسِ الْمَدِينَةِ "in the schools of the city"

فِي دَفَاتِرِهَا "in her copy-books"

c. رَأَيْتُ الْمَدَارِسَ "I saw the schools".

1. مَا عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ؟ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ كُتُبٌ وَدَفَاتِرٌ

وَجَرَائِدٌ 2. تَحْنُ شَرَبْنَا قَهْوَةً فِي فَنَاجِينَ كَبِيرَةٍ

وَمَا شَرَبُوا قَهْوَةً فِي فَنَاجِينَ صَغِيرَةٍ 3. مَا

أَشْتَرَيْتَ فِي الدَّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ؟ 2. إِشْتَرَيْتَ هُنَاكَ

جَرَائِدَ وَدَفَاتِرَ وَكُتُبًا 4. قَدْ دَخَلَ سَارِقٌ عُرْفَةَ

أَخِي الْكَبِيرِ وَسَرَقَ السَّاعَةَ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا أَخِي

الْبَارِحَ 5. كَتَبْتُ الْيَوْمَ بِحَبْرٍ أَزْرَقٍ وَأَخْضَرَ

كَتَبْتُ بِحَبْرٍ أَحْمَرَ 6. كَانَ أَخِي فِي مَحْكَمَةِ

الصُّلَحِ وَرَأَى هُنَاكَ الْمُحَامِيَ الَّذِي كَانَ ابْنَارَحَ

فِي كَرَمٍ جَدِيدٍ 7. مَنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي الْجَدِيدَ؟ 1. أُمِّي

رَأَتْهُ ابْنَارَحَ 8. قَالَ أَبُوكَ إِنَّهُ يَنْتَظِرُكَ فِي

مَحْكَمَةِ الصُّلَحِ 9. انْتَظَرَكَ الْخَبَّاطُ قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ

فِي دُكَّانِهِ الَّذِي فِي حَارَةِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ 10. أَيْنَ الْجَبْنَةُ

الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا فِي السُّوقِ؟ 3. هِيَ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

11. إِشْتَرَيْتَ الْيَوْمَ فِي السُّوقِ ثَقَاكًا وَعَبَا وَجُوزًا

12. هَذِهِ الثَّقَاكَةُ حَامِيَتُهُ وَتِلْكَ الثَّقَاكَةُ حُلْوَةٌ

13. هَذِهِ الْجُوزَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجُوزَةِ

Vocabulary: 390. سَارِقٌ "thief" 391. سَرَقَ "to steal"

(Imperat): (يَسْرِقُ) 392. سَاعَةٌ "hour" and also: "watch";

"clock" 393. مَحْكَمَةٌ "court of justice" (pluri: مَحَاكِمُ)

394. صَلَاحٌ "peace", "reconciliation" 395. مَحَامٍ "advocate",

"barrister" رَأَتْ 396. "she saw"

(رَأَتْ) she saw him (it) 397. أَتُظَنُّ "to expect", "to wait for"

(Imperl: يَنْتَظِرُ) 398. جُبْنَةٌ "a piece of cheese" (see below Note)

399. مَطْبَخٌ "kitchen" 400. تَفَاحٌ "apples" 401. عَنَبٌ "grapes"

402. حَامِضٌ "sour" 403. حَلْوٌ "sweet".

Note: Many nouns which denote plants or materials have two singular forms:

1. A form without ة in the end. This form denotes the plant or the material generally. For example:

التَفَاحُ فَاكِهَةٌ "the apple is a fruit",

جُبْنٌ يُصْنَعُ مِنْ حَلِيبٍ "cheese is produced from milk".

The nouns in this singular form are to be translated sometimes as if they were plurals e. g.

اِشْتَرَيْتُ اِلْاُسُوقَ تَفَاحًا وَعِنَبًا وَجُوزًا in the market apples, grapes and nuts.

2. A form with ة in the end. This form indicates a single object

of the named plant or a piece of the named material e. g. اِي تَفَاحَةً وَاه تَفَاحَةً "I have an apple and he has an apple",

هَذِهِ الْجُبْنَةُ اكْبَرُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الْجُبْنَةِ "this piece of cheese is bigger than that piece of cheese".

"Two apples", "Two pieces of cheese" is to be translated: تَفَاحَتَانِ ، جُبْنَتَانِ.

Translate: 1. This clock is bigger than the clock which thy (masc.) brother bought in Jerusalem 2. Where is the (piece of) cheese which I put on the table? — It is on the table in the kitchen 3. This apple is sour. It is sourer than that apple 4. Who has seen to-day the director of this school? — I have seen him to-day 5. This new house is smaller than the old house of the uncle (on the father's side) 6. What did thy (fem.) brother buy in the new shop? — He bought there books and copy-books 7. The houses in this village are bigger than the houses of that village 8. I have a white dog and a black dog. The white dog is fatter than the black dog. 9. Who has seen Ahmad to-day? — My mother has seen him in the new market 10. Ibrahim is bigger than Ahmad and Ahmad is bigger than Salim 11. My father was yesterday in the field of Ibrahim.

Forty-seventh Lesson

اَلْبَبَغَاةُ

كَانَ لِرَجُلٍ بَبَغَاةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ تَعْرِفُ اَلْكَلَامَ وَادَا مِنْ بَيَا رَجُلٍ قَالَتْ لَهُ «نَهَارَكَ سَمِيدٌ يَا اِخْنِي» وَكَانَتْ تَخْرُجُ اِلَى اَلْبُسْتَانِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ وَتَنْتَظِرُ صَاحِبَهَا اِلَى اَنْ رَجَعَ مِنْ دُكَّانِهِ. وَلَمَّا رَأَتْهُ كَانَتْ تَقُولُ: يَا

عَمِّي خُذْنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ . فَضَاعَتِ الْبَيْعَاءُ يَوْمًا .
فَكَانَ صَاحِبَهَا يَسْأَلُ كُلَّ النَّاسِ عَنْهَا فَقَالَ لَهُ أَحَدُ
الرِّجَالِ : إِنِّي سَمِعْتُ صَوْتَ بَيْعَاءٍ فِي بَيْتِ جَارِي .
فَدَهَبَ صَاحِبُ الْبَيْعَاءِ إِلَى جَارِ ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلِ
وَسَأَلَهُ عَنْ الْبَيْعَاءِ . فَلَمَّا سَمِعَتْ صَوْتَ صَاحِبِهَا
قَالَتْ : « يَا عَمِّي خُذْنِي إِلَى الْبَيْتِ » . فَدَخَلَ الرَّجُلُ
وَأَخَذَهَا مِنْ بَيْتِ السَّارِقِ .

أَسْغَلَةٌ : مَا كَانَتْ الْبَيْعَاءُ تَقُولُ لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ إِذَا
كَانَ يَرِيهَا ، إِذَا كَانَتْ تَخْرُجُ إِلَى الْبُسْتَانِ ، قَالَتْ
رَأَتْ صَاحِبَهَا يَرْجِعُ مِنْ دُكَّانِهِ مَا قَالَتْ لَهُ : قَالَتْ
صَاعَتِ الْبَيْعَاءُ مَا فَعَلَ صَاحِبُهَا ، مَا قَالَ لَهُ أَحَدُ الرِّجَالِ ؟

Vocabulary: 404. بَيْعَاءٌ "parrot", "popinjay" 405. مَرَّ

مَرَّ بِكَ وَمَرَّ فِي مَرَّ بِالْبَيْتِ "he passed the house"

406. نَهَارٌ "day", "daytime" 407. سَعِيدٌ "fortunate", "lucky"

408. إِنْسَانٌ "man" 409. نَاسٌ "people" 410. عَنْ "from", "about", "for".

Forty-eighth Lesson

A

"thy (masc.) house"	(1) بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتٌ
"thy (masc.) school"	(2) مَدْرَسَتُكَ	مَدْرَسَةٌ
"thy (masc.) two houses"	(3) بَيْتَاكَ	بَيْتَانِ
"in thy (masc.) two houses"	فِي بَيْتَيْكَ	فِي بَيْتَيْنِ
"thy (masc.) teachers"	مُعَلِّمُوكَ	مُعَلِّمُونَ
"with thy (masc.) teachers"	مَعَ مُعَلِّمَيْكَ	مَعَ مُعَلِّمَيْنِ
"his (female) teachers"	مُعَلِّمَاتُهَا	مُعَلِّمَاتٌ
"thy (masc.) houses"	بُيُوتُكَ	بُيُوتٌ
"thy (masc.) big house" (1) الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ	بَيْتُكَ الْكَبِيرُ	بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ

(1) A personal suffix added to a noun denotes the property of the noun to the person which the pronominal suffix referred to. e.g. بَيْتُهُ "his house"; بَيْتُهَا "her house". These personal suffixes are therefore called **Possessive Pronouns**.

A possessive pronoun added to a noun defines it completely just as the article **الْ** would do, for "his house" specifies a definite (particular) house. The nouns drop therefore the **Tanwin** (see above Lesson 23(3)) before the possessive pronouns e.g.

بَيْتُهُ "his house" (بَيْتٌ "a house")

(2) Feminine nouns ending in ة change this termination into ت

before the possessive pronouns e.g. مَدْرَسَتَكَ "thy (masc.) school" (مَدْرَسَةٌ "a school")

(3) Nouns to which the possessive pronouns are attached take the forms which they have before a genitive e.g.

بَيْتَانَا الْخَبَازَ "thy (masc.) two houses" (and also:

two houses of the baker", See above Lesson 32 C. (1))

فِي بَيْتِي "in thy (masc.) two houses" (so also:

"in the two houses of Salīm", See above)

رَأَيْتُ بَيْتَيْكَ "I saw thy (masc.) two houses" (so also:

"I saw the two houses of Salīm")

مُعَلِّمُوا سَلِيمَ "thy (masc.) teachers" (so also:

"the teachers of Salīm", See above Lesson 37 A. (3))

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمَيْكَ "I saw thy (masc.) teachers" (so also:

"I saw the teachers of Salīm", See above)

بَيْتُ سَلِيمَ "thy (masc.) house" (so also:

of Salīm", See above Lesson 25 (1) b. Note)

فِي بَيْتِ سَلِيمَ "in thy (masc.) house" (so also:

"in the house of Salīm".)

(4) When an adjective is added to a noun which has a possessive pronoun it is necessary to make the adjective definite e.g.

بَيْتُكَ الْكَبِيرَ "thy (masc.) big house",

بَيْتَا الْكَبِيرَانِ "thy (masc.) two big houses"

The nouns added by the possessive pronouns are as follows :

The number of the possessor	اَبِي	فِي بَيْتٍ	بَيْتَانِ	مُعَلِّمُونَ	فِي بَيْتَيْنِ
The person of the possessor	a house	in a house	two houses	teachers	in two houses
Singular	1 m.f.	اَبِيكَ	بَيْتَاكَ (1)	مُعَلِّمُوكَ	فِي بَيْتِي
	2 m.	بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتَاكَ	مُعَلِّمُوكَ	فِي بَيْتِكَ
	2 f.	بَيْتُكَ	بَيْتَاكَ	مُعَلِّمُوكَ	فِي بَيْتِكَ
Dual	3 m.	بَيْتَهُ (2)	بَيْتَاهَا	مُعَلِّمُوهُ	فِي بَيْتِهِ
	3 f.	بَيْتَهَا	بَيْتَاهَا	مُعَلِّمُوهَا	فِي بَيْتِهَا
Plural	1 m.f.	بَيْتُكُمْ	بَيْتَاكُمْ	مُعَلِّمُوكُمْ	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمْ
	2 m.	بَيْتُكُمْ	بَيْتَاكُمْ	مُعَلِّمُوكُمْ	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمْ
	2 f.	بَيْتُكُمْ	بَيْتَاكُمْ	مُعَلِّمُوكُمْ	فِي بَيْتَيْكُمْ
Plural	3 m.	بَيْتَهُمْ	بَيْتَاهُمْ	مُعَلِّمُوهُمْ	فِي بَيْتِهِمْ
	3 f.	بَيْتَهُنَّ	بَيْتَاهُنَّ	مُعَلِّمُوهُنَّ	فِي بَيْتِهِنَّ

Note: For the first person there is no special Dual form.

(1) The pronominal suffix of the first person is **يَ** when it follows a vowelless **ي** or **ا** For example:

مُعَلِّمُوْرِي "my teachers"
بَيْتَاِي "my two houses";

Note: فِي بَيْتَيْ فِي "in my two houses" instead of فِي بَيْتِي
رَأَى مُعَلِّمِي "he saw my teachers" instead of رَأَى مُعَلِّمِي

(2) The suffixes هُ, هُم, هُن are changed into هَا, هَهُمَا, هُنَّ when they follow the vowel **ا**, **ي**, **و**, **ه**.

فِي بَيْتِهِمْ "in his house" e.g. فِي بَيْتِهِ (ay) **يَ** the
فِي بَيْتَيْهِمَا "in their (maso.) house";

رَأَيْتُ مُعَلِّمِي "I saw his teachers" etc.

Note: The prepositions also take the pronominal suffixes as follows:

لَهَا, لَهُ, لَكَ, لَكَ "to me" or "I have" **لِي** - "to", **لِ**

بِهَا, بِهِ, بِكَ, بِكَ "with"; **بِي** - "in", **بِ**

إِلَيْهَا, إِلَيْهِ, إِلَيْكَ, إِلَيْكَ "into"; **إِلَيَّ** - "to", **إِلَى**

عَلَيْهَا, عَلَيْهِ, عَلَيْكَ, عَلَيْكَ "on"; **عَلَيَّ** - "on", **عَلَى**

قَبْلَهَا, قَبْلَهُ, قَبْلَكَ, قَبْلَكَ "before"; **قَبْلِي** - "before", **قَبْلَ**

مِنْهَا, مِنْهُ, مِنْكَ, مِنْكَ "from", **مِنْ** - "from", **مِنْ**

Forty-ninth Lesson

1. أَبُو آدِي وَأَبُو آدِي هُمَا جَدَاِي. أُمُّ آدِي وَأُمُّ آدِي

هُمَا جَدَاتَاِي وَأَنَا حَفِيدُهُمْ. 2. مَا فَرَسَ جَدُّكَ الْيَوْمَ

فِي بُسْتَانِكُمْ؟ 3. جَدِي فَرَسَ الْيَوْمَ نَحْلًا فِي بُسْتَانِنَا

3. سَلِمٌ وَالِدُهُ خَرَجًا مِنْ مَحْكَمَةِ الصُّلْحِ وَرَجَا

إِلَى بَيْتَيْمَا الَّذِي فِي الدِّيَارَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ. 4. سَلِمَى وَالِدَتَهَا

كَانْنَا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْجَامِعِ. 5. آدِي وَأُمِّي هُمَا وَالِدَاِي

وَأَنَا ابْنُهُمَا. 6. لَوَالِدِي أَبْنَاءُ وَبَنَاتٌ غَيْرِي. فَسَابَأْنَاهُمْ

إِخْوَتِي وَبَنَاتُهُمْ أَخَوَاتِي. 7. كَانَ آدِي فِي الْقُدْسِ مَرَّةً

وَفِي حَيْفًا مَرَّتَيْنِ. 8. أَخِي كَانَتْ الْيَوْمَ فِي حَدِيقَةِ

الْحَيَوَانَاتِ وَرَأَتْ هُنَاكَ نُسُورًا مُخْتَلِفَةً. 9. مَا هُوَ

الشَّيْءُ الَّذِي حَمَلَهُ الشَّيْخُ مِنَ الْعَانَةِ؟ 10. الشَّيْخُ حَلَّ

مُزْمَنَةً حَطَبٍ مِنْ هُنَاكَ. 11. أَيْنَ الْكُتُبُ الْجَدِيدَةُ

الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْتَهَا الْبَارِحَ؟ 12. أَخَذَهَا أَخِي الْكَبِيرُ

مُعَلِّمُوِي وَمُعَلِّمُوَا كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي حَارَةِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

11. بَنَاتُ جَارِنَا وَبَنُو كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْعَابَةِ الْفَرِيَّةِ

مِنْ قَوْمِنَا 12. أَيْنَ كَتَّابَكَ الْجَدِيدَانِ وَأَيْنَ
دَفْتَرَايَ؟ - كَتَّابَايَ الْجَدِيدَانِ فِي عُرْفَتِي
وَدَفْتَرَايَ أَيْضًا هُنَاكَ.

Vocabulary: 411. حَفِيدٌ "grandson" (plural: أَحْفَادٌ)

وَالِدٌ 414. "to plant trees" 413. نَخْلٌ "date palms" 412.

أَخٌ 417. "the parents" 416. وَالِدَةٌ "mother" 415. "father"

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

بُرْصَرٌ 418. أُخْتٌ "sister" (plural: أَخَوَاتٌ) 419. (أَخَوَاتٌ

Fiftieth Lesson

1. كَمْ مَرَّةً كَانَ أَحْوَكَ الْكَبِيرُ الْيَوْمَ فِي يَافَا؟ -
أَخِي الْكَبِيرُ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ مَرَّتَيْنِ هُنَاكَ 2. هَذَا

الصَّيَادُ صَادَ الْيَوْمَ أَزْدَيْنِ فَذَبَحَ أَحَدُهُمَا وَبَاعَ لَحْمَهُ
فِي السُّوقِ 3. هَذَا الصَّيَادُ يَصِيدُ دَائِمًا فِي الثَّانِيَةِ
الْقَرِيبَةِ مِنْ قَوْمِنَا 4. لَمَّا ذَا يَكْبِي الرَّاكِدَ وَالْأُفْمُوحَ
تَسِيلُ مِنْ عَيْنِهِ؟ - هُوَ يَكْبِي مِنْ شِدَّةِ الْبَرْدِ وَ قَدْ
جَاءَ إِلَى تَلْمِيذِكَ وَبَعْدَ مَا سَلَّمَ عَلَيْهِ قَالَ إِنَّكَ تَنْتَظِرُنِي
فِي بَيْتِكَ الْجَدِيدِ 6. مُعَلِّمٌ زَيْدٌ مَرَّ بَانِي وَسَلَّمَ عَلَيْهِ
7. عَمَّكَ وَآرَنِي الْبَارِحَ وَأَنَا أَزُورُهُ عَدَاً إِنَّ شَاءَ اللَّهُ
8. مَتَى يَزُورُنِي خَالَكَ؟ - هُوَ يَزُورُنِي بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ
إِنَّ شَاءَ اللَّهُ 9. مُعَلِّمُكَ زَارُوا الْيَوْمَ مُعَلِّمِي فِي
الْمَدْرَسَةِ 10. بَيوتُكَ الْجَدِيدَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيوتِهِمْ
الْجَدِيدَةِ 11. مَنْ رَأَى بَيْتِي الْجَدِيدَيْنِ؟ - أَنَا
وَأَيْتُهُمَا 12. كَلْبَا أَخِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبَيْكَ.

Vocabulary: 427. كَمْ "how many?", "how much?"

كَمْ بَيْتًا "how many houses?" 428. كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?"



كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?" 428. كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?"

كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?" 428. كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?"

كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?" 428. كَمْ مَرَّةً "how many times?"

سَلَّ 434. (دُومُعُ : plural) "year" دَمِعُ 433. (يَبْكِي Imperfect,

"eye" ٤٣٦. عَيْنُ ٤٣٥. (إِسْبِيلُ) "impairment," "to run" ٤٣٧. "flow,"

"strength", "hardness" 437.  "cold", "coolness" 438. 

"to salute", "to greet". 439. زَارَ "to visit" (imperfect, ^{زَارَ}زَارَ)

440. ³ | 441. ¹ ₂ to wish", "to desire"

"God willing!").

Translate: 1. His two new books are in my small room.

2. Where are our two dogs? — they are in the room of our grand-father 3. How many books did thy father buy yesterday in the new shop? — My father bought yesterday two books 4. How many hares did the hunter hunt yesterday in this forest? — he hunted yesterday two hares 5. His brother visited me yesterday and I shall visit him in the after-noon 6. Where are my two copy-books? — Thy (masc.) brother has taken them 7. Who has seen to-day the two asses of my grand-father? — The brother of our neighbour saw them 8. The teachers of the new school have to-day visited our teachers 9. These two cows are fatter than our two cows 10. Our two horses are bigger than your (masc.) two horses 11. How many copy-books has thy (masc.) brother bought in the after-noon? — He has bought two copy-books 12. Our sister is bigger than your (masc.) sister and your sister is bigger than his sister.

Fifty-first Lesson

٢١ - ١٠٢ - ٢٢
٢٢ - ١٠٢ - ٢٢

كَانَ صَيَادٌ يَصِيدُ عَصَافِيرَ فِي يَوْمٍ بَارِدٍ. فَكَانَ
يَنْجَحِبُهَا وَالْأُذُنُوعَ تَسْلُمُ مِنْ غَيْبِهِ مِنْ شِدَّةِ الْبَرْدِ.

فَقَالَ أَحَدُ الْمَصَافِرِ لِصَاحِبِهِ: لَا تَخَفْ مِنْ هَذَا
الرَّجُلِ. أَلَا تَرَاهُ يَبْكِي؟ فَقَالَ لَهُ آخَرُ: لَا تَنْظُرْ

وَقَالَ

النَّسُورِ مَرَّةً وَقَدْ بَدَأَ

Vocabulary: 442. ١٢٢ "cold", "cool" 443. ١٢٣

447. عَمِلَ "to make" (imperfect: يعمل) 448. سَقَطَ "to fall".

"to happen" 449. حَرْبٌ "war", "battle" 450. سَاعِدٌ "to help",

451. مَرْكَه "battle, fight" (Imperfect: يَسَاعِدُ) "to assist"

452. *if* (لَوْ) *if not* 453. *fight with* (جَابَّ)

(imperfect) (يَكْرِبُ) 454. لَ is a particle used for emphasis and it is omitted in translation e. g. لَفَعَلْنَا "truly" we have done it".

Fifty-second Lesson

"a big dog"	كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ
"a fat cow"	بَقْرَةٌ سَمِينَةٌ
"his dog is bigger than my dog" ⁽¹⁾	كَلْبُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي
"his cow is fatter than her cow"	بَقْرَتُهُ أَشَمَنُ مِنْ بَقْرَتِهَا
"he is the biggest in this village"	هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ ⁽²⁾
"she is the biggest in this village"	هِيَ الْبِكْبَرَى فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ
"a red dog"	كَلْبٌ أَحْمَرٌ ⁽³⁾
"a red cow"	بَقْرَةٌ أَحْمَرَاءُ
"dumb children"	أَوْلَادٌ خُرْسٌ

(1) The comparative degree of the adjectives is always formed

on the pattern of أَكْبَرُ thus:

أَشَمَنُ مِنْ - "fatter than"

أَصْغَرُ مِنْ - "smaller than"

أَطْوَلُ مِنْ - "longer than" etc.

The comparative form is the same for all genders and numbers e. g.

كَلْبِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِهَا "my dog is bigger than her dog"

بَقْرَتِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَقْرَتِي "her cow is bigger than my cow";

كَلْبَاهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي "his two dogs are bigger than her two dogs"

(2) The comparative form is also used for the superlative. In this case it is always defined by the article e. g. هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ "he is the biggest", or by a following genitive e.g.

هِيَ الْبِكْبَرَى "she is the tallest"; هِيَ الْأَكْبَرُ "he is the biggest pupil" (literally:

"the biggest of the pupils"), or by a pronominal suffix e. g. هُوَ أَكْبَرُهُم "he is the biggest of them".

The feminine of the superlative is always on the pattern of هِيَ الْبِكْبَرَى "she is the tallest"; هِيَ الْأَكْبَرَى "she is the smallest".

(3) The adjectives denoting colours or bodily defects have, in the masculine, the same form as comparatives. For example: كَلْبٌ أَحْمَرٌ "a red dog"; وَلَدٌ خُرْسٌ "a dumb child".

The feminine of these adjectives has the form of أَحْمَرَاءُ "green girls" and the plural of these has the form of خُرْسَاءُ "dumb girls".

بَقْرَتَانِ أَحْمَرَتَانِ "two red cows" - In the Dual the Hamza of the fem. sing. is changed into و

Note: بَقْرَتَانِ أَحْمَرَتَانِ "two red cows" - In the Dual the Hamza of the fem. sing. is changed into و

Fifty-third Lesson

1. بَقَرَتْنِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَقَرَتِكَ. هِيَ الْأَكْبَرَى فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ 2. لِي بَقَرَتَانِ حَمْرَاوَانِ وَلكِ بَقَرَتَانِ سَوْدَاوَانِ 3. دَخَجَ جَارِي الْيَوْمِ خَرْمَوْفِينَ وَوَزَعَ اللَّحْمَ مَجَازًا بَيْنَ فُقَرَاءِ هَذِهِ الْحَارَةِ 4. فَتَحَ جَارُنَا دُكَّانَ سَمَكٍ فِي السُّوقِ الَّذِي فِي الْمَدِينَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ 5. هُوَ لِجَارِنَا الْأَوَّلَادِ خُرْمُسُ وَأُولَآئِكَ الْأَوَّلَادُ طُرْمُسُ 6. لِجَارِنَا ثَوْرٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ. هُوَ الْأَكْبَرُ وَالْأَسْمَنُ فِي قَرْيَتِنَا 7. أَخِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ يَدْرُسُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ. هُوَ أَصَمُّ مِنَ الْإِسْلَامِيدِ فِيهَا 8. لِأَخِي الْأَكْبَرِ سَيَّارَتَانِ كَبِيرَتَانِ اشْتَرَاهُمَا فِي الْقُدْسِ فِي السَّنَةِ الْمَاضِيَةِ 9. الدُّرُوسُ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ سَهْلَةٌ وَالْدُّرُوسُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابِ صَعِبَةٌ 10. هَذِهِ الدُّرُوسُ أَهْسَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الدُّرُوسِ 11. هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ خَفِيفٌ وَذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ خَفِيفٌ 12. هَذَا الْكُرْسِيُّ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ

ذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيِّ 13. ذَلِكَ الْكُرْسِيُّ أَخْفَ مِنْ هَذَا الْكُرْسِيِّ 14. لِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ وَلِأَخِي بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ. بَيْتُ أَخِي أَجَدُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 15. اخْتَأَ جَارُنَا الْخُرْمَاوَانِ زَارَتَا الْيَوْمِ أَخِي الْأَكْبَرِ.

Vocabulary: 455. وَزَعَ "to distribute" (Imperfect: يُوزِعُ)

456. مَجَازًا "gratias" 457. سَمَكٌ "fish" 458. "dumb"

459. أَطْرْمُسُ "deaf" 460. دَرَسَ "lesson" (plural: دُرُوسٌ)

461. سَهْلٌ "easy" 462. صَعِبٌ "difficult" 463. أَخْفَ is the

comparative of خَفِيفٌ "light (in weight)" 464. أَجَدُ is the

comparative of جَدِيدٌ "new".

Translate:

1. His two camels are bigger than our two camels. 2. Our horse is the biggest horse in this village. 3. My brother bought yesterday two white cows. 4. These two white cows are fat. 5. This pupil is lazy and that pupil is diligent. 6. I have red ink and she has blue ink. 7. Where did thy (masc.) friend buy the red ink? — He bought the red ink in the new shop. 8. The lessons to-day are difficult. 9. These lessons are easier than those lessons. 10. Who opened this big window? — The pupil of my brother opened it. 11. Where is the white cow which I bought yesterday? — The white cow is in the garden of thy (masc.) grand-father. 12. This table is heavy and that table is light. 13. That table is lighter than this table. 14. This table is heavier than this table.

Fifty-fourth Lesson

الدَّكَّانُ الْجَدِيدُ

فَتَحَ رَجُلٌ دُكَّانَ سَمَكٍ. وَعَلَى فَوْقَ بَابِهِ
لَوْحًا صَغِيرًا كَتَبَ عَلَيْهِ: «هَذَا مَيْبَاعُ السَّمَكِ».
فَجَاءَ أَحَدُ أَصْدِقَائِهِ وَقَالَ لَهُ: لَمَّا كَتَبْتَ عَلَى
اللُّوحِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هَذَا» أَلَا مَيْبَاعُ السَّمَكِ إِلَّا فِي
دُكَّانِكَ، فَحَذَفَ صَاحِبُ الدُّكَّانِ الْكَلِمَةَ «هَذَا».
ثُمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقٌ آخَرٌ فَقَالَ لَصَاحِبِ الدُّكَّانِ: لَمَّا
كَتَبْتَ عَلَى اللُّوحِ الْكَلِمَةَ «مَيْبَاعُ» أَلَا يَفْهَمُ
النَّاسُ أَنَّكَ لَا تُوزِّعُ السَّمَكَ بَحَاثًا. فَحَذَفَ
الْكَلِمَةَ «مَيْبَاعُ». ثُمَّ جَاءَ صَدِيقٌ ثَالِثٌ وَقَالَ: لَمَّا
كَتَبْتَ الْكَلِمَةَ «سَمَكُ» أَلَا يَرَاهُ النَّاسُ وَلَا
يَسْمُونَهُ. فَزَعَجَ صَاحِبُ الدُّكَّانِ اللُّوحَ.

Vocabulary: 465. عُلِقَ "to hang" 466. لَوْحٌ "board", "plate"

467. مَبَّاعٌ "is sold" 468. كَلِمَةٌ "word" 469. حَذَفَ "to subtract"

470. ثَالِثٌ "third" 471. سَمٌّ "to smell" (يَسْمُ) 472. نَزَعَ "to remove", "to take away".

Fifty-fifth Lesson

The Cardinal Numbers

A. The numerals too have each a masculine form and a feminine form as follows:

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
١	one	وَاحِدَةٌ (إِحْدَى)	وَاحِدٌ (أَحَدٌ)
٢	two	إِثْنَانِ	إِثْنَانِ
٣	three	ثَلَاثٌ	ثَلَاثَةٌ (ثَلَاثَةٌ)
٤	four	أَرْبَعٌ	أَرْبَعَةٌ
٥	five	خَمْسٌ	خَمْسَةٌ
٦	six	سِتٌّ	سِتَّةٌ
٧	seven	سَبْعٌ	سَبْعَةٌ
٨	eight	ثَمَانٍ	ثَمَانِيَةٌ
٩	nine	تِسْعٌ	تِسْعَةٌ
١٠	ten	عَشْرٌ	عَشْرَةٌ
١١	eleven	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ
١٢	twelve	إِثْنًا عَشْرَةَ	إِثْنًا عَشَرَ

Arabic ciphers	Translation	Feminine numerals	Masculine numerals
١٣	thirteen	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ
١٤	fourteen	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ
١٥	fifteen	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ
١٦	sixteen	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ
١٧	seventeen	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ
١٨	eighteen	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ
١٩	nineteen	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ
٢٠	twenty	عِشْرُونَ	عِشْرُونَ
٣٠	thirty	ثَلَاثُونَ	ثَلَاثُونَ
٤٠	fourty	أَرْبَعُونَ	أَرْبَعُونَ
٥٠	fifty	خَمْسُونَ	خَمْسُونَ
٦٠	sixty	سِتُّونَ	سِتُّونَ
٧٠	seventy	سَبْعُونَ	سَبْعُونَ
٨٠	eighty	ثَمَانُونَ	ثَمَانُونَ
٩٠	ninety	تِسْعُونَ	تِسْعُونَ
١٠٠	hundred	مِائَةٌ (مِائَةٌ)	مِائَةٌ

masculine and feminine

مِائَتَانِ (مِئَتَانِ or مِئَاتَانِ) 200 (٢٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ (ثَلَاثِمِئَةٍ or

٣٠٠) 300؛ أَرْبَعُمِائَةٍ 400 (٤٠٠)؛ خَمْسِمِائَةٍ 500 (٥٠٠)؛

سِتِّمِائَةٍ 600 (٦٠٠)؛ سَبْعِمِائَةٍ 700 (٧٠٠)؛ ثَمَانِمِائَةٍ 800

(٨٠٠)؛ تِسْعِمِائَةٍ 900 (٩٠٠)

أَلْفٌ 1000 (١٠٠٠)؛ أَلْفَانِ 2000 (٢٠٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثَةُ أَلْفٍ

3000 (٣٠٠٠)؛ أَرْبَعَةُ أَلْفٍ 4000 (٤٠٠٠)؛ خَمْسَةُ أَلْفٍ

5000 (٥٠٠٠)

أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا 11000 (١١٠٠٠)؛ اثنَا عَشَرَ أَلْفًا

12000 (١٢٠٠٠)؛ ثَلَاثَةُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا 13000 (١٣٠٠٠)؛

عِشْرُونَ أَلْفًا 20000 (٢٠٠٠٠)؛ خَمْسُونَ أَلْفًا 50000

(٥٠٠٠٠)؛ مِئَةُ أَلْفٍ 100 000 (١٠٠٠٠٠)؛ أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ

(مِئَتُونَ or 1,000,000 (١٠٠٠٠٠٠٠)؛ صِفْرٌ Zero

B. In compound numbers from 21 to 99 the units are put before the tens and are connected by وَ ("and"), the units having

each a masculine or a feminine form e. g.

٦٣ (fem.)؛ ثَلَاثٌ وَسِتُونَ 63 (masc.)؛ ثَلَاثَةٌ وَسِتُونَ

٧٥ (fem.)؛ خَمْسٌ وَسَبْعُونَ 75 (masc.)؛ خَمْسَةٌ وَسَبْعُونَ

٩٦ (fem.)؛ سِتٌّ وَتِسْعُونَ 96 (masc.)؛ سِتَّةٌ وَتِسْعُونَ

١ read قرأت خمسة وعشرين كتاباً ٢ read 20 books.
٣ read 205 books قرأت مائتين وخمسة كتب 25 books

Fifty-sixth Lesson

١. لاخي الكبير سيارتان كبيرتان إحداهما سيارة ركاب والأخرى سيارة شحن ٢. في الأسبوع سبعة أيام وهي: يوم الأحد ويوم الاثنين ويوم الثلاثاء ويوم الأربعاء ويوم الخميس ويوم الجمعة ويوم السبت ٣. في اليوم أربع وعشرون ساعة وفي الساعة ستون دقيقة وفي نصف الساعة ثلاثون دقيقة وفي ربع الساعة خمس عشرة دقيقة وفي ثلث الساعة عشرون دقيقة. أما الدقيقة ففيها ستون ثانية ٤. في كل جنيه فلسطيني مائة غرش وفي كل غرش عشرة ملات ٥. بكم اشتريت اليوم ثيابا وبكم اشتريت عباءة ٦. اشتريت اليوم ثيابا بسبعة غروش وعباءة بثلاثة عشر غرشا ٥. بكم اشتريت هذين اللذين ٦. اشتريت أحدهما بسنة

ملات والأخرى اشتريت بعشرين ملاً ٧. إن كنتم أنت (أو: هم) كم سنة ٨. أنا ابن خمس عشرة سنة (أو: هم) خمس عشرة سنة ٩. أنا ابن خمس وعشرين سنة (أو: هم) خمس وعشرين سنة ١٠. واشي الكبير ابن ثلاث وثلاثين سنة (أو: هم) واشي الكبير ثلاث وثلاثون سنة ١١. اشتريت اليوم أربعة كتب جديدة واشي اشتري أنني عشر كتاباً ١٢. واشي الصغير كان في يافا مرتين وفي حيفا أربع مرات وفي القدس أنني عشرة مرة.

Vocabulary: 473. راكب "passenger" (plural: ركاب)

474. "freight", "cargo", "load" 475. أسبوع (or: جمعة)

476. الأحد 477. (أسابيع) (plural: أسبوع)

478. الاثنين 479. يوم الثلاثاء

480. الأربعاء 481. يوم الخميس

482. يوم السبت 483. يوم الجمعة

484. نصف (and) دقيقة 485. دقيقة

- *half* 485. رُبْعٌ 486. ثُلُثٌ 1/3 487. ثَانِيَةٌ *second*
 (plural : ثَوَانٌ) 488. جُنَيْهٌ *pound* 489. غِرْشٌ *piastre*
 (plural : مِلَّاتٌ) 490. مِلٌّ *mil* (plural : مِلَّاتٌ) 491. أَوْ
 or 492. عُمُرُهُ كَمْ سَنَةً (or) ابْنُ كَمْ هُوَ
 is he? 493. هُوَ ابْنُ سَنَتَيْنِ (or) هُوَ سَنَتَانِ *he is two
 years old*.

1. فِي هَذَا الشَّارِعِ خَمْسَةٌ وَأَرْبَعُونَ بَيْتًا وَفِي
 ذَلِكَ الشَّارِعِ سَبْعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ بَيْتًا 2. أَيْنَ تَعَلَّمْتَ
 اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟ — تَعَلَّمْتُهَا فِي مَدْرَسَةٍ مَسَائِيَّةٍ 3. فِي
 هَذِهِ الدِّيْنَةِ أَرْبَعُ مَدَارِسَ مَسَائِيَّةٍ لِلتَّعْلِيمِ الْعَمَلِ
 الْقِرَاءَةِ وَالْكِتَابَةِ 4. هَلْ يَعْرِفُ هَذَا الْفَلَّاحُ الْقِرَاءَةَ
 وَالْكِتَابَةَ؟ — لَا هَذَا الْفَلَّاحُ لَا يَعْرِفُ لَا الْقِرَاءَةَ
 وَلَا الْكِتَابَةَ هُوَ أُخِي 5. إِفْرَأ يَا أَحْمَدُ مَا كَتَبْتُ
 عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 6. قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ لِتَلْمِيذِهِ اقْرَأ يَا ابْنُ هَيْمٍ مَا
 كَتَبَ زَيْدٌ عَلَى اللُّوْحِ 7. فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْمَسَائِيَّةِ
 مِائَةٌ وَخَمْسُونَ تَلْمِيذًا 8. زَوْجَةُ جَارِنَا لَا تَعْرِفُ
 الْقِرَاءَةَ وَلَا الْكِتَابَةَ هِيَ أُمِّيَّةٌ 9. زَوَّجَ هَذِهِ

الْأَمْرَاءُ يَدْرُسُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي إِحْدَى الْمَدَارِسِ
 الْمَسَائِيَّةِ 10. لَآيِ اثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ بَقْرَةً وَخَمْسَةَ جَمَالٍ.

Vocabulary: 494. مَدْرَسَةٌ مَسَائِيَّةٌ *evening school*.

495. تَعْلِيمٌ *instruction* 496. عَامِلٌ *workman*, "doer" (plur. عَمَالٌ)

497. قِرَاءَةٌ *reading* 498. كِتَابَةٌ *writing* 499. أُخِي *illiterate*.

500. The Alif in إِفْرَأ is Hamzat-i-wasl 501. زَوْجٌ (fem. أُمِّيَّةٌ)

502. husband * 503. زَوْجَةٌ *wife* 504. امْرَأَةٌ *woman*.

Translate: 1. How many pupils are there in this school?
 — in this school there are ninety-four pupils 2. My grand-
 mother has three big dogs and my uncle (on the mother's side) has
 two dogs 3. In this book there are sixty lessons and in
 that book there are sixty-seven lessons 4. In this room there
 are four windows and in the room of my sister there are three
 windows 5. In the afternoon I bought five books in the new
 shop 6. How many books has thy (masc.) pupil? — He has
 fourteen books 7. How old is the brother of our neighbour?
 — he is nineteen years old 8. This peasant is illiterate and
 his wife too is illiterate. 9. How many times was our neighbour
 in Jaffa? — He was there twice or three times 10. I read this
 book twice and my sister read it once 11. In this village
 there are two evening schools.

Fifty-seventh Lesson

الشَّيْخُ وَالْمَلِكُ

رَأَى مَلِكٌ شَيْخًا وَاحِدًا يُقْرِئُ نَحْلًا. فَقَالَ لَهُ:
 أَيُّهَا الشَّيْخُ أَتَوْيْلُ أَنْ تَأْكُلَ مِنْ نَحْرِ هَذَا النَّحْلِ

وَهُوَ لَا يُثِيرُ إِلَّا بَعْدَ سِنِينَ كَثِيرَةٍ.

فَقَالَ السَّيِّحُ: أَفَرَسَ الدَّخْلُ يَتَأَكَّلُ أَخْفَادِي

مِنْ ثَمَرِهِ كَمَا أَكَلْتُ أَنَا مِمَّا خَرَسَ جَدِّي.

فَأَسْتَحْسَنَ أَمْلِكُ ذَلِكَ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا.

فَأَخَذَهَا السَّيِّحُ وَقَالَ: أَيُّهَا أَمْلِكُ لَقَدْ أَكَلْتُ

أَنَا بِنَفْسِي مِنْ ثَمَرِ هَذَا الدَّخْلِ. فَتَعَجَّبَ أَمْلِكُ

مِنْ كَلَامِهِ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى:

فَأَخَذَهَا وَقَالَ: أَيُّهَا أَمْلِكُ وَأَعْجَبُ مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

أَنْ الدَّخْلُ قَدْ أَثْمَرَ السَّنَةَ مَرَّتَيْنِ. فَتَعَجَّبَ أَمْلِكُ مِنْ

كَلَامِهِ وَأَعْطَاهُ عِشْرِينَ دِينَارًا أُخْرَى.

Vocabulary: 504. أَيُّهَا is a vocative particle 505. أَمْلُ

"to hope" (Imperf.) 506. (يُؤْمَلُ) "to hear

fruit", "to produce fruit" (Imperf.) 508. كَمَا "as", "just as"

509. دِينَارٌ "Dinar" 510. "to approve" "to appreciate" 511. نَفْسٌ

نَفْسٌ "soul", "self" (أَنَا بِنَفْسِي) "myself" 512. نَعَجِبَ مِنْ

"to wonder at" 513. عَجِيبٌ "wonderful".

Fifty-eighth Lesson

The Ordinal Numbers

Translation	Feminine	Masculine
the first	الْأُولَى	الْأَوَّلُ
the second	الثَّانِيَةُ	الثَّانِي
the third	الثَّالِثَةُ	الثَّالِثُ
the fourth	الرَّابِعَةُ	الرَّابِعُ
the fifth	الْخَامِسَةُ	الْخَامِسُ
the sixth	السَّادِسَةُ	السَّادِسُ
the seventh	السَّابِعَةُ	السَّابِعُ
the eighth	الثَّامِنَةُ	الثَّامِنُ
the ninth	التَّاسِعَةُ	التَّاسِعُ
the tenth	الْعَاشِرَةُ	الْعَاشِرُ
the eleventh	الْحَادِيَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الْحَادِي عَشَرَ
the twelfth	الثَّانِيَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الثَّانِي عَشَرَ
the thirteenth	الثَّالِثَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الثَّالِث عَشَرَ
the fourteenth	الرَّابِعَةُ عَشْرَةَ	الرَّابِع عَشَرَ
etc.	etc.	etc.

For the ordinals from 20 on the cardinal numbers are used e. g.

الْبَيْتُ الْعِشْرُونَ "the twentieth house",

الْبَيْتُ الْمِائَةُ وَالْأَرْبَعُونَ "the hundred and fourth house"

The compound ordinals of the tens and units are as follows:

Masculine		Feminine	
the 21 st	الْحَادِي وَالْعِشْرُونَ	الْحَادِيَّةُ وَالْعِشْرُونَ	
the 32 nd	الثَّانِي وَالثَّلَاثُونَ	الثَّانِيَّةُ وَالثَّلَاثُونَ	
the 54 th	الرَّابِعُ وَالْخَمْسُونَ	الرَّابِعَةُ وَالْخَمْسُونَ	
etc.	etc.	etc.	

The ordinals from 11-19 are indeclinable e. g.

في الْبَيْتِ الْحَادِي عَشَرَ "in the 11th house";

في الْمَدْرَسَةِ الثَّانِيَةِ عَشْرَةَ "in the 13th school".

1. الدَّرْسُ الْعَاشِرُ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ أَسهلُ مِنْ الدَّرْسِ السَّادِسِ عَشَرَ وَالدَّرْسِ الثَّلَاثِ وَالْخَمْسُونَ أَصعبُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ الْحَادِي عَشَرَ 2. حَرَّتْ هَذَا الْفَلَّاحُ حَقْلَهُ الْيَوْمَ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الْخَامِسَةِ صَبَاحًا إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الْحَادِيَةِ عَشْرَةٍ 3. أَخِي يَحْرُثُ حَقْلَهُ مَرَّتَيْنِ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ الْفَرَّةِ الْأُولَى مِنَ السَّاعَةِ

السَّادِسَةَ صَبَاحًا وَالْفَرَّةَ الثَّانِيَةَ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الثَّانِيَةِ إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الْخَامِسَةِ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 4. قَدْ انْشَيْتُ فِي هَذِهِ الدِّيَارَةِ جَمِيعَ الْحَارِبَةِ الْأُمِّيَّةِ 5. غَايَةُ هَذِهِ الْجَمْعِيَّةِ هِيَ مُحَارَبَةُ الْأُمِّيَّةِ 6. اشْتَرَى الْفَلَّاحُ فِي هَذَا الدَّكَانِ مِنْجَلًا وَزَوْجَتَهُ اشْتَرَتْ فِيهِ سِكِّينًا 7. ذَٰلِكَ الْكِتَابُ مُؤَلَّفٌ مِنْ ثَلَاثَةِ أَجْزَاءٍ. فِي الْجُزْءِ الْأَوَّلِ مِائَتَانِ وَخَمْسُ وَعِشْرُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي الْجُزْءِ الثَّانِي تَلَاوُصَاتٌ وَارْبَعٌ وَسِتُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي الْجُزْءِ الثَّلَاثِ مِائَتَانِ وَسِتُّ وَثَمَانُونَ صَفْحَةً.

Vocabulary: 514. حَرَّثَ "to plough" (impert. (يَحْرُثُ

515. مُحَارَبَةٌ "to be created" 516. جَمْعِيَّةٌ "society" 517. غَايَةُ "object";

"combat", "oppose" 518. أُمِّيَّةٌ "illiterateness" 519. سِكِّينٌ "knife";

520. مِئَاتٌ "sickle", "scythe" (plur. مِئَاتٌ) 521. مُؤَلَّفٌ "is composed of";

522. سَكَّاكِينُ (plur. سَكَّاكِينُ) 523. جُزْءٌ "part" (plur. جُزْءٌ) 524. صَفْحَةٌ "page",

Translate: 1. The book of my brother is composed of two parts, in the first part there are three hundred and fifty-five pages and in the second part there are four hundred and thirty-nine pages. 2. I was yesterday in Jerusalem from eight o'clock in the morning until three o'clock after-noon. 3. The sixteenth lesson in this book is more difficult than the thirty-seventh lesson. 4. Where is the second part of this English book? — It is in my room on the table. 5. When has thy (masc.) brother written his Arabic lessons? — he wrote them from six to eight o'clock in the evening. 6. How many camels has your (masc.) grand-father? — Our grand-father has twenty-five camels. 7. Where is the third part of this book? — It is in the room of our sister. 8. What has thy (masc.) sister written in the after-noon? — She has written the sixteenth lesson. 9. This lesson is easier than the twenty-eighth lesson. 10. How many lessons are there in this book? — In this book there are fifty-seven lessons.

Fifty-ninth Lesson

مَحَارِبَةُ الْأُمِّيَّةِ

أُنْشِئَتْ جَمِيعَةُ فِي أَحَدِ الْمَدَنِ عَائِيهَا مُحَارِبَةُ الْأُمِّيَّةِ.
فَفَتَحَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ مَدَارِسَ لَيْلِيَّةٍ فِي الْقُرَى
وَالْمَدَنِ لِتُعَلِّمَ الْفَلَاحِينَ وَالْعَمَالَ الْقِرَاءَةَ وَالْكِتَابَةَ.
فَارْتَسَلَتْ هَذِهِ الْجَمِيعَةُ يَوْمًا مُقْبِلًا إِلَى أَحَدَى
الْقُرَى بِحِمْلٍ الْمَدَائِيَا لِلَّذِينَ يَعْلَمُونَ فِي هَذِهِ
الْمَدَارِسِ اللَّيْلِيَّةِ تَشْجِيمًا لَهُمْ. فَاجْتَمَعَ الْفَلَاحُونَ
حَوْلَهُ. فَقَدَا الْمَقْبُوسَ أَمْرًا مِنْهُمْ وَطَلَبَ مِنْهَا أَنْ
تَهْرَأَ كَلِمَةً أُشَارَ إِلَيْهَا فِي كِتَابٍ كَانَ فِي يَدِهِ.

فَقَرَأَتْ بَصَوْتٍ عَالٍ «مَنْدِيل» فَقَالَ لَهَا: أَحْسَنْتِ
وَأَعْطَاهَا مَنْدِيلًا. ثُمَّ دَعَا رَجُلًا: قَرَأْ بِسُرْعَةٍ «مَنْجَل».
فَقَالَ الْمَقْبُوسُ: أَحْسَنْتِ وَأَعْطَاهُ مَنْجَلًا.

ثُمَّ دَعَا آخَرَ وَطَلَبَ مِنْهُ أَنْ يقرأَ كَلِمَةً أُشَارَ
إِلَيْهَا. فَقَرَأَ بِسُرْعَةٍ «ثَوْر» وَكَانَتْ الْكَلِمَةُ سَيِّئًا
آخَرَ. فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَقْبُوسُ: انْظُرْ جَيِّدًا وَأَقْرَأْ. فَقَضَى
الرَّجُلُ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى وَقَالَ «ثَوْر». فَقَامَتْ زَوْجَتُهُ
وَقَالَتْ: زَوْجِي يُحْسِنُ الْقِرَاءَةَ وَالْكِتَابَةَ فِي حَاجَةِ
سَدِيدَةٍ إِلَى ثَوْرٍ يَحْرُثُ بِهِ الْأَرْضَ.

Vocabulary: 525. أَرْسَلَ "to send" (Imper.).

526. هَدَّيَا "present" (plural: هَدَايَا) "inspector" 527. مُقْبِلٌ "present" (plural: مُقْبِلِينَ) "inspector" 528.

529. أَجْمَعُ "to be gathered"; 528. تَشْجِيمٌ "encouragement" 529.

530. حَوْلَ "about"; 531. دَعَا "to assemble" 530.

532. أَحْسَنَ "to do (something)" 532. دَعَا "to invite" 533.

533. سُرْعَةً "speed"; 534. نَظَرَ "rapidly" 534.

535. جَيِّدٌ "well" (Imperfect: يُجَسِّدُ) 535. انْظُرْ "to look" (Imperative: انْظُرِي) 536.

537. حَاجَةٌ "need"; 538. قَامَ "to stand up"; 539. قَامَ "well"; 536. قَامَ "good" 536.

Sixtieth Lesson

الرَّجُلُ وَالْمَوْتُ

رَجُلٌ مَرَّةً حَمَلَ خُرْمَةً حَطَبٍ مِنَ الْغَابَةِ
الْقَرِيبَةِ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ. فَتَوَلَّى عَلَيْهِ. فَلَمَّا تَعَبَ مِنْ
حَمْلِهَا رَمَى بِهَا عَنْ كَتِفِهِ وَدَعَا عَلَى نَفْسِهِ بِالْمَوْتِ.
فَتَخَصَّصَ لَهُ الْمَوْتُ وَقَالَ: هَا أَنَا ذَا، لَمَّا دَعَوْتَنِي؟
فَقَالَ لَهُ الرَّجُلُ دَعْوَتُكَ لِتَحْمِلَنِي هَذِهِ خُرْمَةً
الْمَطْبِ عَلَى كَتِفِي.

Vocabulary: 538. مَوْتُ "death" 539. ثَقُلَ "to be heavy"

رَمَى 542. حَمَلَ "carrying" 541. تَعَبَ "to become tired"

تَخَصَّصَ 544. كَتِفٌ "shoulder" 543. "to throw down"

حَمَلَ 546. "to appear" 545. هَا أَنَا ذَا "see, I am here!"

(يُحْمَلُ : imperfect) "to load", "to charge"

ENGLISH - ARABIC

VOCABULARY

Note 1: This vocabulary is only for the exercises in this book which are to be translated from English into Arabic.

Note 2: About the radical letters of the verbs see page 30, Notes 1-2.

Note 3: About the Imperfect see lesson 19.

Note 4: As to the broken plural see lesson 41.

A

q see lesson 23 (3)

after بَعْدَ

also أَيْضًا

always دَائِمًا

an see lesson 23 (3)

and فِ and وَ (see page 70, Note 2)

animal حَيَوَانٌ

- plural : حَيَوَانَاتٌ

to answer أَجَابَ

- imperfect : يُجِيبُ

apple تَفَاحٌ (see page 112, Note)

Arabic عَرَبِيٌّ

- the Arabic اللغة العربية language

are and art see is أَمَّا

as for ; as to

to ask سَأَلَ

- imperfect : يَسْأَلُ

to ask for طَلَبَ

- imperfect : يَطْلُبُ

ass حِمَارٌ

- plural : حِمَارٌ

aunt عَمَّةٌ (on the father's side)

حَالَةٌ (on the mother's side)

B

Baker خَبَازٌ

- plural : خَبَازُونَ

barber حَلَّاقٌ

- plural : حَلَّاقُونَ

to be كَانَ

- imperfect : يَكُونُ

bear دُبٌّ

- plural : أُدْبَابٌ

to bear حَمَلَ

- imperfect : يَحْمِلُ

beat	صَبَّ	bigger	أكْبَرُ
imperfect:	يَصْبُرُ	bird	عَصْفُورٌ
beautiful	جَمِيلٌ	plural:	عَصَافِيرُ
because	لِأَنَّ	black	اَسْوَدُ
because	لِأَنِّي	fem.	سَوْدَاءُ
because he	لِأَنَّهُ	plural:	مَسُودٌ
before	قَبْلَ (temporal)	blacksmith	سَاحِلٌ
	أَمَامَ (local)	plural:	حَدَّادُونَ
	قُدَّامَ (local)	blue	أَزْرَقُ
behind	خَلْفَ	fem.	زَرْقَاءُ
believe	ظَنَّ	plural:	زُرُقٌ
imperfect:	يُظَنُّ	book	كِتَابٌ
bench	بَنْكٌ	plural:	كُتُبٌ
plural	بَنُوكٌ	boy	وَلَدٌ
better than	خَيْرٌ مِنْ	plural:	أَوْلَادٌ
between	بَيْنَ	bread	خُبْزٌ
big	كَبِيرٌ	break	كَسْرٌ

imperfect:	يَكْسِرُ	butter	زُبْدَةٌ
brother	أَخٌ	buy	اِشْتَرَى
plural:	أَخَوَةٌ and إِخْوَانٌ	I bought	اِشْتَرَيْتُ
cage	قَفَصٌ	C	
plural:	أَقْفَاصٌ		
camel	جَمَلٌ	cheese	جُبْنٌ (see page 112, Note)
plural:	جَمَالٌ	child	وَلَدٌ
carpenter	بَجَّارٌ	plural:	أَوْلَادٌ
plural:	بَجَّارُونَ	city	مَدِينَةٌ
carry	حَمَلَ	plural:	مُدُنٌ
imperfect:	يَحْمِلُ	clean	نَظِيفٌ
cat	قِطٌّ and هِرٌّ	cleaner	أَنْظَفٌ
she-cat	قِطَّةٌ and هِرَّةٌ	clock	سَاعَةٌ
chair	كُرْسِيٌّ	three o'clock	السَّاعَةُ الثَّلَاثَةُ
plural:	كُرَاسِيٌّ	five o'clock	السَّاعَةُ الْخَامِسَةُ
cheap	رَخِيصٌ	cock	دِيكٌ
cheaper	أَرْخَصٌ	plural:	دِيُوكٌ
		coffee	قَهْوَةٌ
		come	جَاءَ

— I came	جِئْتُ	— plural :	دَفَاتِيرُ
company	شِرْكَةٌ and شِرْكَةٌ		بَقَرَةٌ
composed	مُؤَلَّفٌ		فِنْجَانٌ
copy-book	دَفْتَرٌ	— plural :	فِنْجَانِينَ
daughter	بِنْتُ and ابْنَةٌ	D	
— plural :	بَنَاتٌ		
day	يَوْمٌ		صَعْبٌ
— plural :	أَيَّامٌ		مُجْتَهِدٌ
— day (opposite of night)	نَهَارٌ		مُدِيرٌ
deaf	أُطْرَشٌ		وَسِخٌ
— fem.	طَرَشَاءُ	to divide	قَسَمٌ
— plur.	طَرَشٌ	— imperfect :	يَقْسِمُ
dear (price)	قَالٍ	dog	كَلْبٌ
— dearer than	أَعْلَى مِنْ	— plural :	كِلَابٌ
to descend	نَزَلَ	door	بَابٌ
— imperfect :	يَنْزِلُ	— plural :	أَبْوَابٌ
different	مُخْتَلِفٌ	to drink	شَرِبَ
		— imperfect :	يَشْرِبُ
		to draw (sketch)	رَسَمَ
		— imperfect :	يُرْسِمُ

— imperative :	أَرْسِمُ	— fem.	خَرَسَاءُ
dumb	أَخْرَسٌ	— plural :	خَرَسٌ
easy	سَهْلٌ	E	
— easier	أَسْهَلٌ		
to eat	أَكَلَ	— plural :	أَفْعَالٌ
— imperfect :	يَأْكُلُ	eleven	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ
eight	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	— feminine :	إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ
— feminine :	ثَمَانٍ	— the eleventh	الْحَادِي عَشَرَ
— the eighth	الثَّامِنُ	— feminine :	الْحَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ
— eighteen	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	English	إِنْكَلِيزِيٌّ
— feminine :	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشْرَةٍ	— the English Language	اللُّغَةُ الْإِنْكَلِيزِيَّةُ
— the eighteenth	الثَّامِنَ عَشَرَ	to enter	دَخَلَ
— eighty	ثَمَانُونَ	— imperfect :	يَدْخُلُ
elephant	فِيلٌ	evening	مَسَاءٌ
		— evening school	مَدْرَسَةٌ مَسَائِيَّةٌ
		eye	عَيْنٌ
		F	
face	وَجْهٌ	far	بَعِيدٌ
— plural :	وُجُوهُ	— farther	أَبْعَدُ

farmer فَلاحٌ	food طَعامٌ
— plural : فَلاحُونَ	foolish أَفْهَقٌ
fat سَمِينٌ	foot رِجْلٌ
— father أَسَمَنٌ	forest غَابَةٌ
father وَالِدٌ and أَبٌ	fortunate سَعِيدٌ
field حَقْلٌ	four أَرْبَعَةٌ
— plural : حَقْلُونَ	— feminine : أَرْبَعٌ
to find وَجَدَ	— the fourth الرَّابِعُ
fire-wood حَطَبٌ	— fourteen أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ
the first الْأَوَّلُ	— feminine : أَرْبَعٌ عَشْرَةَ
— feminine : الأولى	— forty أَرْبَعُونَ
fish سَمَكٌ	fox ثَعْلَبٌ
five خَمْسَةٌ	— plural : ثَعْلَابٌ
— feminine : خَمْسٌ	Friday يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ
— the fifth الْخَامِسُ	friend صَدِيقٌ
— fifteen خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	— plural : أَصْدِقَاءُ
— feminine : خَمْسَةٌ عَشْرَةٌ	from مِنْ
— fifty خَمْسُونَ	

garden حَدِيقَةٌ and بَيْتَانٌ	good جَيِّدٌ and طَيِّبٌ
— plural : حَدَائِقٌ and بَيْتَانٍ	— better than خَيْرٌ مِنْ
gate بَابٌ	grand-father جَدُّ
— plural : أَبْوَابٌ	grand-mother جَدَّةٌ
girl ابْنَةٌ and بِنْتُ	grand-son حَفِيدٌ
— plural : بَنَاتٌ	gratis مَجَّانًا
to go ذَهَبَ	great كَبِيرٌ
— Imperfect : يَذْهَبُ	— greater أَكْبَرُ
to go out خَرَجَ	green أَخْضَرٌ
— Imperfect : يَخْرُجُ	— feminine : خَضِرَاءُ
God إِلَهُ	— plural : خَضِرٌ

G

haste سُرْعَةٌ and سَجَلَةٌ
— in haste بِسُرْعَةٍ and بِسَجَلَةٍ
to have لِي (See page 15)
— have as auxiliary verb see lesson 11 B.
he هُوَ
— he has لَهُ (See also lesson 11. B)

H

head رَأْسٌ	horse حَصَانٌ
— plural: رُؤُوسٌ	— plural: أَحْصَانَةٌ
to hear سَمِعَ	hour سَاعَةٌ
— Imperfect: يَسْمَعُ	house بَيْتٌ
heart قَلْبٌ	— plural: بُيُوتٌ
— plural: قُلُوبٌ	how? كَيْفَ
heavy ثَقِيلٌ	— how many? كَمْ
— heavier أَثْقَلُ	See page 121 vocabulary
hen دِجَاجَةٌ	— how much? كَمْ
her هَا (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.	— how old? كَمْ
here هُنَا	See page 136 vocabulary
him هُوَ (suffix) See lesson 17	— hundred مِائَةٌ and مِئَةٌ
his هُوَ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.	to hunt صَادَ
holy مُقَدَّسٌ	— Imperfect: يَصِيدُ
	hunter صَيَّادٌ
	— plural: صَيَّادُونَ

I

أَنَا	مَرِيضٌ
— I have لِي (See also lesson 11. B.)	illiterate أُمِّي
idle كَسْلَانٌ	— feminine: أُمِّيَّةٌ

immediately فَوَّحًا and فَوَّحًا	is The copula "is" ("are") is omitted in the Arabic translation e.g.
important مُهِمٌ	is "he is big": هُوَ كَبِيرٌ
in فِي	الأولاد فِي البستان "the children are in the garden".
— in front of قُدَّامَ and آتَمَ	it هُوَ
ink حَبْرٌ	— feminine: هِيَ
inspection تَفْقِيشٌ	— it in the objective case هُوَ (suffix)
inspector مُفَقِّشٌ	See lesson 17
iron حَدِيدٌ	— feminine: هِا (suffix)

J

Jaffa يَافَا	Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ
jar جَرَّةٌ	just as كَمَا

K

Key مِفْتَاحٌ	— plural: مِفْتَاحَاتٌ
king مَلِكٌ	— plural: مَلِكَاتٌ
— plural: مُلُوكٌ	know عَرَفَ
Kitchen مَطْبَخٌ	— Imperfect: يَعْرِفُ

L

laboratory	مَعْمَلٌ	10 leave	تَرَكَ
— plural :	مَعْمَلَاتٌ	— imperfect :	يَتْرَكُ
labourer	عَامِلٌ	lesson	دَرْسٌ
— plural :	عَمَّالٌ	— plural :	دُرُوسٌ
lady	سَيِّدَةٌ	life	حَيَاةٌ
— plural :	سَيِّدَاتٌ	flight	خَفِيفٌ
lamb	خَرْوُفٌ	— lighter	أَخْفٌ
— plural :	خَرْفَانٌ	line	خَطٌ
lamp	قَنْدِيلٌ and مِصْبَاحٌ	— plural :	خَطُوطٌ
— plural :	قَنْدِيلَاتٌ and مِصْبَاحَاتٌ	lion	أَسَدٌ
language	لِسَانٌ and لُفَّةٌ	— plural :	أَسَدَاتٌ
large	وَاسِعٌ and كَبِيرٌ	load	سَحْنٌ and حِمْلٌ
10 laugh	صَحَّحَكَ	long	طَوِيلٌ
— imperfect :	يَصْحَحُكَ	— longer	أَطْوَلُ
lazy	كَسَلَانٌ	loyal	أَمِينٌ ; مُخْلِصٌ
10 learn	دَرَسَ and تَعَلَّمَ	loyalty	أَمَانَةٌ ; إِتْقَانٌ
— imperfect :	يَدْرُسُ and يَتَعَلَّمُ	lucky	سَعِيدٌ

M

mod	مَعْجُونٌ	million	مِلْيُونٌ
— plural :	مَعْجَانِينٌ	— plural :	مِلْيَانِينَ
man	رَجُلٌ	minister	وَزِيرٌ
— plural :	رِجَالٌ	— plural :	وُزَرَاءُ
many	كَثِيرٌ	minute	دَقِيقَةٌ
— more	أَكْثَرُ	— plural :	دَقَائِقٌ
marine	مَلَّاحٌ	monday	يَوْمَ الْإِثْنَيْنِ
market	سُوقٌ	month	شَهْرٌ
— plural :	أَسْوَاقٌ	— plur.	شُهُورٌ ; أَشْهُرٌ
martyr	شَهِيدٌ	moon	قَمَرٌ
— plural :	شُهَدَاءُ	more	أَكْثَرُ
me	فِي (suffix) See lesson 17	morning	صَبَاحٌ
meal	حَسْمٌ	Moslem	مُسْلِمٌ
merchant	تَاجِرٌ	— plural :	مُسْلِمُونَ
— plural :	بُحَّارٌ	mosque	مَسْجِدٌ
midday	الظَهْرُ	— plural :	مَسَاجِدٌ and جَوَامِعٌ
milk	حَلِيبٌ	mother	وَالِدَةٌ and أُمٌ

to mount طَلَعَ	much كَثِيرٌ
— Imperfect: يَطْلَعُ	my (suffix) مَـيْ See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.
N	
name اسمٌ This Alif is Hamzat-i-wasi	— nineteen تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ
— plural: أَسْمَاءُ	— feminine تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ
narrow ضَيِّقٌ	— ninety تِسْعُونَ
near قَرِيبٌ	— the nineleth اَلتِّسْعُونَ
— nearer أَقْرَبُ	no لَا
necessary لَازِمٌ	noon الظُّهُورُ
neighbour جَارٌ	— after-noon بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ
— plural: جِيرَانٌ	— before-noon قَبْلَ الظُّهْرِ
new جَدِيدٌ	north شِمَالٌ : شِمَالٌ
newspaper جَرِيدَةٌ	not مَا before the perfect form e. g.
— plural: جَرَائِدُ	— before the Imperfect form e. g. لَا
night لَيْلٌ	number عَدَدٌ
nine تِسْعَةٌ	
— feminine: تِسْعٌ	
— the ninth اَلتَّاسِعُ	

O	
Particle of address يَا	— feminine إِخْدَى
of officer ضَابِطٌ See also lesson 25 (1) b.	to open فَتَحَ
— plural: ضَبَاطٌ	— Imperfect يَفْتَحُ
old قَدِيمٌ	or أَوْ
— age كِبِيرُ السِّنِّ	the orient اَلْمَشْرِقُ
— man شَيْخٌ See also page 136, Vocabulary	orientalist مُسْتَشْرِقٌ
on عَلَى	the other اَلْآخَرُ
once مَرَّةٌ	— feminine اَلْآخَرَى
— adverbial: مَرَّةً	our نَا (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.
one وَاحِدٌ	ove: فَوْقَ , عَلَى
— feminine: وَاحِدَةٌ	ox ثَوْرٌ
— one of أَحَدٌ See lesson 55 C. (1)	— plural: ثِيَارٌ and أَثَوَارٌ
P	
page صَفْحَةٌ	part جُزْءٌ and قِسمٌ
— plural: صَفَحَاتٌ	— plural: أَقْسَامٌ and أَجْزَالٌ
palace سَرَايٌ	partner شَرِيكَ
the parents اَلْوَالِدَانِ	— plural: شُرَكَاءُ

partnership شِرْكَةٌ and شِرْكَةٌ

the post الطَّائِصِي

peasant see farmer

pest طَاعُونٌ

picture صُورَةٌ

— plural : صُورٌ

piece قِطْعَةٌ

— plural : قِطَعٌ

pilgrim حَاجٌّ

— pilgrimage حَجٌّ

pistol مُسَدِّسٌ

to play لَعِبَ

— Imperfect : يَلْعَبُ

to plough حَرَثَ

— imperfect : يَحْرَثُ

poor فَقِيرٌ

— plural : فُقَرَاءٌ

— poorer أَفْقَرُ

possessor صَاحِبٌ

— plural : أَصْحَابٌ

post بَرِيدٌ

— post office مَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ and دَائِرَةُ الْبَرِيدِ

pretty جَمِيلٌ

pupil تَلِمِذٌ

— plural : تَلَامِيذٌ

to put وَضَعَ

— Imperfect : يَضَعُ

to read قَرَأَ

— Imperfect : يَقْرَأُ

red أَحْمَرٌ

— feminine خَمْزَاءٌ

— plural خَمْزٌ

restaurant مَطْعَمٌ

— plural مَطَاعِمٌ

to return رَجَعَ

— Imperfect : يَرْجِعُ

R

rich غَنِيٌّ

— richer أَغْنَى

to ride رَكَبَ

— Imperfect : يَرْكَبُ

— Imperative ارْكَبْ

river نَهْرٌ

— plural أَنْهَارٌ

room غُرْفَةٌ

— plural غُرُفٌ

S

— Imperfect : يَقُولُ

school مَدْرَسَةٌ

— plural مَدَارِسٌ

sea بَحْرٌ

— plural بَحَارٌ and أَبْحُرٌ

second (1/60 minute) ثَانِيَةٌ

— plural ثَوَانٍ

— the second (2nd) اِلْتِنَانِي

شِرْكَةٌ and شِرْكَةٌ

the post الطَّائِصِي

peasant see farmer

pest طَاعُونٌ

picture صُورَةٌ

— plural : صُورٌ

piece قِطْعَةٌ

— plural : قِطَعٌ

pilgrim حَاجٌّ

— pilgrimage حَجٌّ

pistol مُسَدِّسٌ

to play لَعِبَ

— Imperfect : يَلْعَبُ

to plough حَرَثَ

— imperfect : يَحْرَثُ

poor فَقِيرٌ

— plural : فُقَرَاءٌ

— poorer أَفْقَرُ

possessor صَاحِبٌ

— plural : أَصْحَابٌ

post بَرِيدٌ

— post office مَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ and دَائِرَةُ الْبَرِيدِ

pretty جَمِيلٌ

pupil تَلِمِذٌ

— plural : تَلَامِيذٌ

to put وَضَعَ

— Imperfect : يَضَعُ

to read قَرَأَ

— Imperfect : يَقْرَأُ

red أَحْمَرٌ

— feminine خَمْزَاءٌ

— plural خَمْزٌ

restaurant مَطْعَمٌ

— plural مَطَاعِمٌ

to return رَجَعَ

— Imperfect : يَرْجِعُ

R

rich غَنِيٌّ

— richer أَغْنَى

to ride رَكَبَ

— Imperfect : يَرْكَبُ

— Imperative ارْكَبْ

river نَهْرٌ

— plural أَنْهَارٌ

room غُرْفَةٌ

— plural غُرُفٌ

S

— Imperfect : يَقُولُ

school مَدْرَسَةٌ

— plural مَدَارِسٌ

sea بَحْرٌ

— plural بَحَارٌ and أَبْحُرٌ

second (1/60 minute) ثَانِيَةٌ

— plural ثَوَانٍ

— the second (2nd) اِلْتِنَانِي

تِلْكَ ^ف feminine	يَطْنُ ^ف imperfect
— that ox ذَلِكَ الْبُخْرُ	this هَذَا
— that cow تِلْكَ الْبَقْرَةُ	— feminine هَذِهِ
thee (ك) (ك) ^ف See lesson 17	— this ox هَذَا الْبُخْرُ
their ^ف (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48 A. B.	— this cow هَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ
— feminine هُنَّ (suffix)	thou أَنْتَ
them ^ف (suffix) See lesson 17	— feminine أَنْتِ
— feminine هُنَّ (suffix)	— thou hast لَكَ
then ^ف تَمَّ	— fem ^ف أَنْتِ See also lesson 11 B.
there هُنَاكَ	thousand أَلْفٌ
these هَؤُلَاءِ	— plural أَلْفٌ and أَلْفٌ
they ^ف هُمْ	three ثَلَاثَةٌ and ثَلَاثَةٌ
— feminine هُنَّ	— fem, ثَلَاثٌ and ثَلَاثٌ
— they have لَهُمْ	— the third الثَّالِثُ
— fem. ^ف لَهنَّ. See also lesson 11 B.	— thirteen ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ
thief سَارِقٌ	— fem, ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةٍ
thing شَيْءٌ	— thirty ثَلَاثُونَ
— plural أَشْيَاءٌ	thursday الْخَمِيسُ
to think (believe) ظَنَّ	thy ^ف أَنْتِ (suffix) See lesson 8 and lesson 48, A. B.

— feminine : كُ (suffix) يَطْنُ	tree شَجَرَةٌ
time وَقْتُ	tribe قَبِيلَةٌ
— plural : أَوْقَاتٌ	— plural : قَبَائِلُ
tired تَعَبَانُ	يوم الثلاثاءَ Tuesday
to إِلَى	twelve اثْنَا عَشَرَ
to-day الْيَوْمَ	— feminine : اثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ
to-morrow غَدًا	twenty عِشْرُونَ
too أَيْضًا	twice مَرَّتَيْنِ
tooth سِنٌ	two اثْنَانِ
— plural : أَسْنَانُ	— feminine : اثْنَتَانِ See also lesson 32
uncle ^ف عَمٌّ (on the father's side)	— imperfect : يَشْهَمُ
— خَالَ (on the mother's side)	until حَتَّى إِلَى أَنْ
under تَحْتَ	upon فَوْقَ عَلَى
to understand فَيَمَّ	us نَا (suffix) See lesson 17
very جِدًّا	village قَرْيَةٌ
vest صَدْرِيَّةٌ	— plural : قُرَى

vineyard	كَرْمٌ
— plural :	كُرُومٌ
to visit	زَارَ
— I visited	زُرْتُ
— imperfect :	يُزِيرُ

W

war	حَرْبٌ
— plural :	حُرُوبٌ
watchman	حَارِسٌ
water	مَاءٌ
— plural :	مِيَاهٌ
way	طَرِيقٌ
— plural :	طُرُقٌ
we	نَحْنُ
— we have	لَنَا
See also lesson 11 B.	
Wednesday	يَوْمُ الْاَرْبَعَاءِ
week	سَبْعَةٌ ; اسبوعٌ

vocabulary	قَامُوسٌ
— plural :	قَوَامِيسٌ
voice	صَوْتٌ
— plural :	أَصْوَاتٌ
volume	مَجْلَدٌ

white	أَبْيَضٌ
— fem.	أَبْيَضَاءٌ
— plural :	بَيْضٌ
who ?	مَنْ
why ?	لِمَاذَا ؟
wide	وَاسِعٌ ; عَرِيفٌ
wife (consort)	زَوْجَةٌ

wind	رِيحٌ
— plural :	رِيَّاحٌ
window	مِثْبَاتٌ
— plural :	شِبَابِيكٌ
wine	خَمْرٌ
winter	شَيْتَانٌ

year	سَنَةٌ
— plural :	سَنَوَاتٌ ; سِنُونَ
yes	نَعَمْ

Y

wire	سَلْكٌ
— plural :	سَلَكٌ ; أَسْلَاطٌ
— wireless	لَا سِلْكِيّ
with	بِـ ; مَعَ
wolf	ذِئْبٌ
— plural :	ذِئَابٌ
woman	أَمْرَأَةٌ
— plural :	نِسَاءٌ
wonderful	عَجِيبٌ
woodcutter	حَطَّابٌ
wool	صُوفٌ
to write	كَتَبَ
— imperfect :	يَكْتُبُ

yesterday	الْبَارِحَةَ ; الْبَارِحَ
you	أَنْتَ ; أَنْتُمْ
— feminine :	أَنْتِ ; أَنْتُنَّ
— you (mecc.) have	لَكُمْ

— you (fem.) have also lesson 11 B.	— Younger than your
— You in objective case — fem. (suffix). See lesson 17	— feminine : (suffix)
young	

KEY

to the

Arabic Language and Grammar

VOLUME ONE

by

Dr. JOCHANAN KAPLIWATZKY

RUBIN MASS / JERUSALEM

Note 1: In this key a translation is given only of the

texts for the conversation-lessons in the book 'Arabic Language and Grammar'. The texts of the stories in the above book are composed of the matter in the preceding conversation-lessons and therefore no translation of it is necessary here.

Note 2: The English translation here of the Arabic

text in the book "Arabic Language and Grammar" is, as far as possible, a literal one, care being taken especially to the Arabic original in order to facilitate the understanding of the structure of the Arabic sentences for the English beginner. For the same reason the second person singular (thou, thee, thy) is used in the key as well as in the book.

Fifth Lesson

1. I have a house and thou (m.) hast a house
2. We have a large house
3. He has a big dog and she has a big dog
4. They (m.) have a fat dog and they (f.) have a fat dog
5. We have a large garden and they (m.) have a large vineyard
6. She has a vineyard and he has a garden
7. Thou (m.) hast a large garden and a large vineyard
8. A vineyard and a garden
9. A house and a vineyard
10. She has a big book and I have a big book
11. You (m.) have a book and they (m.) have a book
12. We have a fat ox and you (f.) have a fat ox
13. He has an ox and thou (m.) hast an ox and a dog.

1. لَنَا كَلْبٌ وَهُمْ كَلْبٌ 2. لَهُ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهَا

بَيْتَانِ كَبِيرَيْنِ 3. لَهُمْ تَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ وَكَأَبٌ سَمِينٌ 4. لَهُمْ

كُرْمٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُنَّ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ 5. لَكَ كِتَابٌ وَلَنَا

كِتَابٌ 6. لَهَا كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَهُنَّ كِتَابٌ كَبِيرٌ

7. لِهِنَّ كَلْبٌ سَمِينٌ وَلِي تَوْرٌ سَمِينٌ .

Seventh Lesson

1. I have a father and a mother and he has a father and a mother
2. A big door and a big window
3. We have a big door and they (m.) have a big window
4. She has a big and a fat cock and they (f.) have a big and a fat cock
5. You (m.) have a fat ox and a big dog
6. You (f.) have a house and a garden and she has a large vineyard
7. I and thou (m.)
8. Thou (m.) and he
9. He is big and fat and thou (m.) art big and fat
10. I have a big and fat elephant and he has a fat ox
11. She has a copy-book and a book and thou (f.) hast a copy-book and a book
12. An elephant and an ox. A house and a garden.

1. أَبٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَيِّدٌ كَبِيرٌ 2. لَكَ فِيلٌ سَمِينٌ

وَلَنَا تَوْرٌ كَبِيرٌ وَسَمِينٌ 3. لِي دَفْترٌ وَكِتَابٌ وَلَهُ

كِتَابٌ ٤. لَهَا دِيكٌ سَمِينٌ ٥. لَنَا كَلْبٌ وَتَسْكُنُ
كَلْبٌ ٦. أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ ٧. أَنَا وَهُوَ. هُوَ وَأَنْتَ ٨. هُوَ
سَمِينٌ ٩. أَنْتَ سَمِينٌ وَكَبِيرٌ ١٠. لَكُمْ أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ
وَلَنَا أَبٌ وَأُمٌّ.

Ninth Lesson

1. I have a hare and thou (m.) hast a hare 2. Thy (m.) hare is bigger than my hare 3. He has a dog and I have a dog 4. His dog is fatter than my dog 5. Salim is a big boy 6. Shakir is a big pupil 7. Salim is bigger than my pupil 8. Shakir is bigger than my boy 9. Where is thy (m.) ox? — My ox is in my garden 10. Thy (m.) book is bigger than my book 11. Her vineyard is bigger than my vineyard 12. His ox is bigger and fatter than my ox 13. Thy (m.) ox and thy (m.) dog are in my garden 14. Where is thy (m.) pupil? — My pupil is in my vineyard 15. His house is bigger than my house 16. Where is my hare? — Thy (m.) hare is in my vineyard.

١. كَلْبُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ كَلْبِي ٢. أَيْنَ ثَوْرُكُمْ؟
ثَوْرُكُمْ فِي بُسْتَانِي ٣. دِيكُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ دِيكِي ٤. أَرْنَاكِ
فِي بُسْتَانِي ٥. وَلَدُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ وَلَدِي ٦. أَيْنَ تَلْمِيذِي
وَتَلْمِيذُكَ؟ — تَلْمِيذِي وَتَلْمِيذُكَ فِي كَرْمِي ٧. لِي ثَوْرٌ
وَلَهَا ثَوْرٌ. ثَوْرُهَا أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ ثَوْرِي ٨. أَيْنَ
كَلْبُكُمْ؟ — كَلْبُكُمْ فِي بَيْتِي

Twelfth Lesson

1. What is this? — This is an ass 2. This is my ass 3. This is thy (m.) dog 4. My ass ate and thy (m.) ass did not eat 5. I ate and thou (m.) didst not eat 6. Who has written and who has drawn? — Salim has written and I have drawn 7. I have a brother and a sister and he has a brother and a sister 8. Shakir is bigger than my brother 9. I have a camel and thou (m.) hast a camel. Thy (m.) camel is bigger and fatter than my camel 10. Who went out of my garden? — My brother went out from there 11. Who has eaten in my garden? — My father has eaten there 12. My brother has written here and my sister has written there 13. My camel has eaten here and thy (m.) camel has eaten there 14. They (m.) have written and did not draw 15. They (f.) have drawn and did not write 16. We went out of my garden and you (m.) did not go out from there 17. They (m.) have drawn and you (f.) did not draw 18. We and you (m.). They (m.) and you (f.). I and they (f.). Thou (m.) and he. She and thou (f.) 19. We have written and did not draw. You (m.) have drawn and did not write. They (m.) have written and did not draw.

١. أَنَا أَكَلْتُ وَأَنْتَ مَا أَكَلْتَ ٢. هُمُ كَتَبُوا
وَحَنَنٌ رَسَمْنَا ٣. أَنِّي خَرَجْتُ مِنْ بُسْتَانِي ٤. أُمِّي خَرَجَتْ مِنْ
كَرْمِي ٥. حَنَنٌ كَتَبْنَا وَهُوَ مَا كَتَبَ ٦. تَلْمِيذِي أَخ
وَأَخْتُ وَلَكَ أَخٌ وَجَلَّتْ أَكَلَ وَجَارِي مَا أَكَلَ ٨. مَا
هَذَا؟ — هَذَا جَلٌّ وَ كَلْبُكُمْ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ كَلْبِي
١٠. أَكَلْنَا فِي بُسْتَانِي ١١. هُوَ أَكَلَ وَهِيَ مَا أَكَلَتْ
١٢. أَخْتِي كَتَبَتْ وَأَنْتِ مَا كَتَبْتِ ١٣. أَخْرَجْتُمْ
خَرَجَ مِنْ كَرْمِي ١٤. نَحْنُ أَكَلْنَا وَهِيَ مَا أَكَلَتْ.

Fourteenth Lesson

1. My vineyard is far and thy (m.) vineyard is near from here 2. His house is near from here and his garden is far from here 3. Who has read and who has written?—My sister has read and I have written 4. What did thy (m.) sister read?—My sister read my book 5. My dog is black and thy (m.) dog is red 6. I have blue ink and thou (m.) hast black ink 7. My copy-book is heavy and thy (m.) copy-book is light 8. My brother has read my newspaper and my neighbour has written in my copy-book 9. They (f.) have read and they (m.) have written 10. We have written and you (m.) have read 11. My garden is far from here and thy (m.) garden is farther than it 12. My vineyard is near from here and his vineyard is farther than it 13. My ink is blue and thy (m.) ink is black 14. My cock is heavy and his cock is light 15. He has read my newspaper and she did not read.

1. أَخَذْتُ كِتَابًا وَأَنَا قَرَأْتُ 2. أَيْنَ جَارُكَ؟—هُوَ فِي
كَرْمِي 3. جَبُرَ هَا أَسْوَدُ وَجَبُرَ هَا أَرْقَى 4. بَسْتَأْهَنُ
أَقْرَبُ مِنْ كَرْمِي 5. دِيكَاتُ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ دِيكَ 6. مَا
قَرَأَ؟—هُوَ قَرَأَ جَرِيدَتِي 7. بَسْتَكُكُمْ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ
بَيْتِي 8. مَنْ قَرَأَ وَمَنْ كَتَبَ؟—أَنَا كَتَبْتُ وَجَارِي
قَرَأَ 9. نَحْنُ قَرَأْنَا وَهُمْ مَا قَرَوْا 10. هِيَ كَتَبَتْ
وَأَخِي مَا كَتَبَتْ 11. هِيَ أَكَلَتْ وَهُوَ مَا أَكَلَ
12. بَيْتُهُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 13. دَفْتَرُهُ أَثْقَلُ مِنْ
دَفْتَرِي 14. أَيْنَ كَلْبِكُمْ؟—كَلْبِي فِي بَيْتَانِي

Fifteenth Lesson

1. Who has drunk and who has eaten?—My brother has drunk and I have eaten 2. They (m.) ate and did not drink and they (f.) drank and did not eat 3. My hare has drunk and thy (f.) hare has not drunk 4. His hare is fatter than my hare 5. My brother entered my vineyard and thy (m.) neighbour went out of it 6. I have a fat lamb and she has a fat lamb 7. His lamb is big and my lamb is bigger (than it) 8. Thou (m.) art bigger than my brother and I am bigger than thee (m.) 9. Thy (f.) pupil is big and her pupil is bigger (than he) 10. Who went out of my garden?—My grand-father went out of it 11. My grand-mother entered my garden and went out of it 12. Where is thy (m.) grand-father and thy grand-mother?—My grand-father and my grand-mother are in my vineyard 13. My father and my grand-mother are in my garden and my mother and grand-mother are in my vineyard.

1. جَلَسْتُ كِتَابًا وَأَنَا قَرَأْتُ 2. خَرُوفُكُمْ أَسْمَنُ
مِنْ خَرُوفِي 3. أَيْنَ أُمِّكَ؟—أُمُّكَ فِي كَرْمِي
4. تَلْمِذُكَ كَبِيرٌ وَتَلْمِذَتِي أَكْبَرُ مِنْهُ 5. جَدُّهُ دَخَلَ
بَيْتَانِي 6. جَمَلِي شَرَبَ وَجَمَلُهَا مَا شَرَبَ 7. هُمُ
شَرِبُوا وَنَحْنُ مَا شَرَبْنَا 8. هُوَ خَرَجَ مِنْ بَيْتِي
9. بَيْتِي أَقْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِهِ 10. أَخِي شَرَبَتْ وَأَخِي
مَا شَرَبَتْ 11. فَيْلُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فَيْلِي

Fifteenth Lesson

1. Where did Ibrahim find my horse?—He found it in my garden 2. Where did Ahmad find my cow?—He found it in my vineyard 3. Who has beaten my brother?—Thy (m.) neighbour has beaten him 4. Who found you (m.) in my garden?—Thy (m.) neighbour found us there 5. Who

has beaten you (m) ? - Thy (m) neighbour has beaten us
6. Who has eaten my bread ? - We have eaten it 7. Who
has drunk my milk ? - We have drunk it 8. Who has beaten
thee (m) ? - Thy (m) neighbour has beaten me 9. Who has
broken my cup ? - Thy (m) sister has broken it 10. Who has
beaten my ass ? - Thy (m) pupil has beaten it 11. My brother
did not break my cup. My sister has broken it 12. My sister
has drunk my milk and my brother did not drink it 13. Who
has beaten my camel ? - Ahmad has beaten it 14. Your (m)
horse is bigger and fatter than my horse 15. I have black
ink and he has green ink 16. She has a black dog and you
(m) have a white dog 17. I have a horse and an ass and
you (m) have an ox and a camel 18. Thy (m) cup is bigger
than my cup.

1. مَنْ وَجَدَ كِتَابِي؟ - أَخِي وَجَدَهُ 2. مَنْ
صَرَبَ تَلْمِيذِي؟ - جَارُنَا صَرَبَهُ 3. مَنْ كَسَرَ فِنْجَانِي؟
أَخِي 4. جَبَرْتُ كَسْرَتَهُ 5. جَبَرْتُ كَسْرَتَهُ وَجَبَرْتُ كَسْرَتَهُ
6. جَبَرْتُهَا أَخْضَرَ وَجَبَرْتُهَا أَحْمَرَ 7. أَكْبَرُ كَسْرَ فِنْجَانِي 8. لِي حِمَارٌ وَلَهَا حِمَارٌ
9. حِمَارُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ حِمَارِي 10. حِمَارُهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ حِمَارِي
11. كَلْبُكُمْ أَسْوَدٌ وَكَلْبُنَا أَبْيَضٌ 12. أَخُوهَا صَرَبَ ثَوْرِي 13. أَيْنَ وَجَدَ فِنْجَانِي؟
هُوَ وَجَدَهُ فِي كَرْمِي 14. (نَحْنُ) وَجَدْنَاهَا. (هِيَ)
وَجَدَتْهُ. (أَنَا) وَجَدْتُهَا. (أَنْتَ) وَجَدْتَنِي.

Twentieth Lesson

1. Who will write and who will draw ? - My mother will write
and my sister will draw 2. They (m) have written and you (m)
did not write. 3. They (m) will write (write) and you (m) will not
write (do not write). 4. They (f) have drunk and you (f) did not
drink 5. They (f) will drink (drink) and you (f) will (do) not
drink 6. My cow drinks now and thy (m) cow does not drink
7. Where does Fatima write ? - She writes in my copy-book
8. Salih has now written and I did not write 9. Where didst
thou (m) leave my ox ? - I left it in my garden 10. Shafir
left my book in my school 11. Who has opened my book ?
- My pupil has opened it 12. I have a table and a chair and
thou (m) hast a table and a bench 13. Thy (m) table is
bigger than my table 14. Where is my brother Ahmad ? -
He is in my school 15. My sister Fatima is bigger than I and
I am bigger than thee (f) 16. Who opened my book ? -
I did not open it. Thy (m) pupil Shafir opened it 17. She
will go (goes) out and thou (f) will not (do not) go out
18. Thou (m) will draw and he will not draw 19. Ibrahim
writes and Fatima does not write 20. You (m) went out of
my garden and they (m) do (will) not go out of it.

1. أَخُوكَ كَتَبَ وَنَحْنُ مَا كَتَبْنَا 2. نَحْنُ نَكْتُبُ
وَأَنْتُمْ لَا تَكْتُبُونَ 3. مَائِدَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ مَائِدَتِي
4. لِي كُرْسِيٌّ وَبَنَّاكَ وَلَهَا مَائِدَةٌ وَكُرْسِيٌّ 5. أَيْنَ
كَتَبَ سَلِيمٌ؟ - هُوَ كَتَبَ فِي كَرْمِي 6. ثَوْرُهُ
أَسْوَدٌ وَثَوْرُهَا أَبْيَضٌ 7. تَلْمِيذُكُمْ كَسَرَ كُرْسِيٍّ
8. حِمَالَتُكَ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ حِمَالَتِي 9. أَيْنَ أَخُوهُ؟
- هُوَ فِي مَدْرَسَتِي 10. هُمُ يَكْتُبُونَ وَهُوَ لَا يَكْتُبُ
11. أَخَذْنَا شَرَبَتَ وَأَخَذْنَاكَ مَا شَرَبْتَ 12. أَيْنَ خَرُوفُهُ؟ -
خَرُوفُهُ فِي بُسْتَانِي 13. أَنَا كَتَبْتُ وَجَدْتَنِي مَا كَتَبْتَ

14. بِسَيْتِكَ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ بَيْتِي 15. لَنَا تَوْرٌ وَحِمَارٌ وَلَهُ
جَمَلٌ وَبَيْرَةٌ 16. لَهَا اخْتٌُ وَلِي اخْتٌُ وَأَخٌ.

Twenty-second Lesson

1. Where art thou (m.) going, my brother?— I am going (I go, or I shall go) to my school 2. Where is thy (m.) book?—My book is on my table 3. My sister went out of my room and my brother did not go out from there 4. My brother returned from Jaffa and my father will return to-morrow from there 5. My teacher went with my grandfather to my school 6. Who went out with thee (m.) from my room?—Thy (m.) teacher went out with me from there 7. I have a big dog and thou (m.) hast a small dog. Thy (m.) dog is smaller than my dog (m.) 8. My brother is smaller than I and I am smaller than thou (m.) 9. My neighbour is very poor and thy (m.) neighbour is very rich 10. Thy (m.) camel is smaller than my camel and thy (m.) ass is bigger than my ass 11. Ahmad is very poor and Salim is poorer than he 12. Ibrahim is very rich and Shakir is richer than he.

1. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَتِي؟— جَرِيدَتُكَ عَلَى مَائِدَتِي 2. حَصَانُهُ
أَصغرٌ مِنْ حَصَانِي 3. تَوْرُهَا كَبِيرٌ جَدًّا 4. ابْنُهُمْ
أَغْنَى مِنْ جَارِي 5. جَارُهُ غَنِيٌّ وَجَارُونَا فَقِيرٌ 6. يَا سَلِيمُ
أَيْنَ كِتَابِي؟— كِتَابُكَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 7. بُسْتَانُكُمْ أَصغرٌ
مِنْ بُسْتَانِي 8. أَنْتَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
أَخِي 9. أَيْنَ جَدِيدِي؟— هُوَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 10. جَدُّكُمْ
أَغْنَى مِنْ جَدِيدِي.

Twenty-fourth Lesson

1. This camel is small. It is smaller than my camel 2. This ass is cheap and that ass is cheaper than it 3. That tailor is poor. He is poorer than my neighbour 4. Who was in my room to-day?— Zayd was there and the baker too was there 5. The barber was in Jaffa to-day and the blacksmith also was there. 6. Thy (m.) sister was in my garden and Fatima also was there 7. My mother was in Jaffa to-day and my sister also was there 8. Where is the new book?— The new book is on my table in my room 9. When did Zayd return from Jaffa and when did the barber return?— Zayd returned from Jaffa to-day and the barber also returned to-day 10. What is this?— This is a dog 11. This dog is bigger and fatter than my dog 12. This new house is larger than my house and that house is smaller than it 13. This elephant is big and that elephant is bigger than it 14. When didst thou (m.) return from Jaffa?— I returned from there to-day 15. Thy (m.) grandfather was in my vineyard and in my garden to-day 16. Where is the big dog and where is the ass?— The big dog is in my garden and the ass also is in my garden.

1. كِتَابُكَ أرْخصٌ مِنْ كِتَابِي 2. هَذَا الْجَمَلُ
كَبِيرٌ وَذَلِكَ الْجَمَلُ صَغِيرٌ 3. هَذَا الْخَيْطُ غَنِيٌّ
وَذَلِكَ الْخَيْطُ فَقِيرٌ 4. الْخَلْفُ كَانَ فِي يَافَا وَالْخَدَّاءُ
أَيْضًا كَانَ هُنَاكَ 5. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ
بَيْتِي 6. ذَلِكَ الْكِتَابُ الْجَدِيدُ أرْخصٌ مِنْ كِتَابِي
الْجَدِيدِ 7. مَتَى رَجَعْتَ مِنْ يَافَا؟— أَنَا رَجَعْتُ الْيَوْمَ
مِنْ هُنَاكَ 8. أَيْنَ الْخَيْطُ؟— هُوَ فِي عُرْفَتِي 9. هَذَا
الْكَلْبُ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ كُلِّي 10. بُسْتَانُ كَبِيرٌ.
أَيْنَ الْبُسْتَانُ الْكَبِيرُ. هَذَا الْبُسْتَانُ الْكَبِيرُ. هَذَا الْبُسْتَانُ

كَبِير. ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ. ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ الْكَبِيرُ.
 ذَلِكَ الْبُسْتَانُ كَبِيرٌ.

Twenty-sixth Lesson

1. Who opened the big door? — I opened it. 2. What hast thou (m.) eaten to-day? — I have eaten bread and meat to-day. 3. The dog of the neighbour is fatter than the dog of the barber.
4. Where is the book of the director of the school? — His book is on the table in the room of the grand-father.
5. The grand-father of the neighbour was in the vineyard of my brother to-day.
6. The neighbour of the tailor is poor. He is poorer than the neighbour of the blacksmith.
7. Who visited thee (m.) in the school to-day? — The teacher of Muhammad visited me there.
8. What is thy (m.) name and what is the name of thy (m.) sister? — My name is Isma'il and the name of my sister is Fatima.
9. Thy (m.) sister visited the sister of the teacher to-day.
10. Where is the son of the blacksmith? — His son is in the house of the baker.
11. Where is the dog of the uncle (on the mother's side)? — The dog of the uncle is under the table.
12. The house of the aunt (on the mother's side) and her vineyard.
13. My uncle (on the father's side) has visited thy (m.) uncle in the new house to-day.
14. My aunt (on the father's side) was in the vineyard of my grand-mother to-day.
15. The big son of the teacher was in Jaffa to-day.
16. Who drank the milk? — I did not drink it. My brother Ibrahim drank it.
17. My uncle (on the mother's side) visited the uncle of the neighbour in Jaffa.
18. What is the name of the uncle (on the mother's side)? — The name of the uncle is Isma'il.
19. The name of my brother is Ibrahim and the name of my sister is Hind.
20. This new house is larger than my house.

1. هَذَا الْكَلْبُ كَبِيرٌ. هُوَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْكَلْبِ
 2. لِي حِمَارٌ وَاهٌ وَحَصَانٌ 3. الْخِصَانُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْخِمَارِ
 4. وَالْجَمَلُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْخِصَانِ 5. ابْنُ مَدِيرِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ —
 هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْجَيْدِ 6. مَا أَسْمُكَ — لِسَيِّ مَلِيحَانِ

6. أَكَلْتُ خُبْزًا وَخَمًا وَهِيَ شَرَبْتُ خَلِيبًا 7. هَذَا
 الْجَمَلُ أَكْبَرُ وَأَسْمَنُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْجَمَلِ 8. الْعَلَقُ
 أَفْقَرُ مِنَ الْخَمَادِ 9. الْمُعَلِّمُ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْمَدِيرِ
 10. الْخَمَادُ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيدِ 11. هَذَا الْفِيلُ كَبِيرٌ.
 هُوَ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ فِيلِي 12. ابْنُ الْخَيَّاطِ 1 — هُوَ فِي
 بَيْتِ الْخَبَّازِ 13. ابْنُ الْكَتَّابِ الْجَدِيدِ 1 — الْكِتَابُ
 الْجَدِيدُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ.

Twenty-seventh Lesson

1. The hare is a small animal. 2. My brother was in the park of the animals (zoo) to-day and my father will be there to-morrow.
3. What has thy (m.) brother seen in the zoo? — My brother has seen there a big lion in a big cage.
4. Hast thou (m.) written to-day? — Yes, I have written to-day.
5. Hast thou (m.) opened the gate of the vineyard? — No, I have not opened it.
6. Will thy (m.) brother be at school to-morrow? — Yes, he will be there to-morrow.
7. What didst thou (m.) ask the baker and what did he answer? — I asked him when he was in the house of the uncle (on the mother's side) and he answered that he was there to-day.
8. I have a friend and his name is Salim.
9. My father rode in a boat on sea and thy (m.) father will ride in a boat to-morrow.
10. My brother rode on ass and thy (m.) brother rode a horse.
11. The mariner died in the house of my friend.
12. Who saw the brother of the mariner? — The father of my friend saw the brother of the teacher in Jaffa.
13. My grand-father visited the father of the teacher is Tawfiq and the name of the brother of the director is Zayd.
14. ابْنُ أَخِي الْمَدِيرِ 1 — هُوَ فِي هَذَا الْبُسْتَانِ 2. أَنَا
 فَتَحْتُ بَابَ الْعُرْفَةِ 3. ابْنُ صَدِيقِي 1 — صَدِيقُكَ فِي

عُرِفَ الْجَدُّ أَبُوهُمْ كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَ أَبُوَهَا
رَكِبَ حِمَارًا وَأَخُوهَا رَكِبَ حَصَانًا ٦. خَالِي زَارَ أَبَا
الْمُعَلِّمِ ٧. مَنْ رَأَى أَنَا الْخَيْطَاطَ؟ ٨. أَخُو الْخَدَّادِ
رَأَى أَنَا الْخَيْطَاطَ ٨. الْأَسَدُ الْكَبِيرُ فِي قَفْصٍ كَبِيرٍ
٩. هَلْ كَتَبَ الْيَوْمَ؟ نَعَمْ هُوَ كَتَبَ ١٠. أَفْتَحَ
بَابَ الْمُرَفَّةِ؟ نَعَمْ هُوَ فَتَحَهُ

Twenty-ninth Lesson

1. This copy-book is big and that copy-book is small
2. This fox is bigger than my fox 3. Who opened the small
window?— I opened the small window 4. Where dost thou
(m.) go, my uncle?— I go to the new shop 5. My sister was
in the new market 6. I went to the market in the morning and
returned from there in the evening 7. The father of Salim was
at school in the forenoon 8. What hast thou (m.) drunk in the
forenoon and what hast thou (m.) drunk in the afternoon?— In
the forenoon I drank a cup of milk and in the afternoon I drank
a cup of coffee 9. This pupil is bigger than the pupil of my
brother 10. Where is the fat ox?—The fat ox is in the garden
of the carpenter 11. Shakir saw a pretty bird on the tree 12. My
brother drank a cup of coffee and my uncle (on the father's side)
drank milk 13. Where is the bird of Muhammad?— His bird
is in a small cage 14. I have a fox and a hare and thou (m.)
hast a dog and a lamb 15. Where is the little bird?— The
little bird is on the tree 16. Where is the new chair?— The
new chair is under the tree.

١. شَرِبْتُ فَيْحَانٌ قَهْوَةً وَأَخِي شَرِبَتْ حَلِيبًا
٢. أَخِي كَانَ فِي الدَّكَانِ الْجَدِيدِ ٣. جَدِّي كَانَ فِي
الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَرَجَعَ مِنْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ ٤. اخْتَارَ

كَانَتْ فِي السُّوقِ صَبَاحًا ٥. أَيْنَ الْمُصْغُورِ الصَّغِيرِ؟
هُوَ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ ٦. لِي ثَمَلْبُ وَلَهُ ثَمَلْبُ
٧. هَذَا الثَّمَلْبُ اسْمُهُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الثَّمَلْبِ ٨. هَذَا
التَّوْرُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ التَّوْرِ ٩. أَيْنَ تَلْمِذِكُمْ؟
هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ الْجَدِّ ١٠. أَيْنَ بَيْتِ الْخَيْطَاطِ؟ بَيْتُ
الْخَيْطَاطِ فِي السُّوقِ ١١. أَيْنَ النَّجَّارِ؟ النَّجَّارُ فِي
بُسْتَانِ النَّجَّارِ ١٢. هَذَا النَّجَّارُ أَقْرَبُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ النَّجَّارِ
١٣. هَذَا الْمُصْغُورُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الْمُصْغُورِ ١٤. أَخِي
كَانَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ صَبَاحًا وَأَخِي كَانَتْ هُنَاكَ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ

Thirty-first Lesson

1. When did thy (m.) brother mount the mount and when did
he descend from it?— My brother mounted the mount in the fore-
noon 2. What did thy (m.) brother eat and what did thy (m.)
sister eat?— My brother ate bread and a piece of meat and
my sister ate bread and a piece of cheese 3. Where is the
(she-)cat of my aunt (on the mother's side)?—It is in the little room
4. My grand-mother has a (she-)cat and an ape. The ape is
bigger than the (she-)cat. 5. This hand is clean and that hand
is dirty 6. This foot is clean and that foot is dirty 7. Who
has taken the newspaper of the teacher?— I do not know who
has taken it 8. Dost thou (m.) know the brother of Salim?— No,
I do not know him 9. Who raised this newspaper from
the earth?— I raised it 10. My brother found a nut on the
earth and raised it 11. Salim raised this nut from the earth
12. Where is the newspaper of my brother?— Ibrahim took it and
put it on the big table 13. Where is my little brother?— He
is in the forest 14. Thy (m.) brother plays with my brother in
the forest 15. Ahmad played with my brother in the forest.

1. هَذِهِ الْمُدْرَسَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الْمُدْرَسَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ
2. أَيْنَ هِرَّةُ الْأَخْتِ؟ - هِيَ هُنَا فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ. 3. هَلْ يَعْرِفُ الْغُرْفَةَ كَبِيرَةٌ وَتِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ 4. هَلْ يَعْرِفُ أَخُوكَ أَيْنَ مُدِيرِ هَذِهِ الْمُدْرَسَةِ؟ - لَا هُوَ لَا يَعْرِفُ أَيْنَ هُوَ 5. هَذِهِ الرَّجُلُ نَظِيفٌ وَتِلْكَ الرَّجُلُ وَسِخَةٌ 6. غُرْفَةُ الْأَخْتِ نَظِيفَةٌ وَغُرْفَةُ الْأَخِ وَسِخَةٌ 7. هَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ سَمِينَةٌ 8. ذَلِكَ الْكَلْبُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ هَذَا الْكَلْبِ وَتِلْكَ الْبَقْرَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ وَهَذِهِ الْبَقْرَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ 10. مَنْ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةِ وَمَنْ كَانَ فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ؟ - أَخُوكَ كَانَ فِي هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةِ وَأَخُوهُ كَانَ فِي تِلْكَ الْغُرْفَةِ

Thirty-third Lesson

1. I have two big oxen and thou (m.) hast two big cows
2. The two dogs of my brother are big and the two dogs of my grand-father are small
3. Thy (m.) two cows are small and his two cows are big
4. My brother divided the piece of the cheese in two parts. He ate the one (in Arabic: the first) part and my sister ate the other part
5. I bought two cows to-day, one cow before noon and one cow in the after-noon. The one (fem.) cow is small and the other is big
6. This tailor is old. He is older than that tailor
7. These two dogs are small and those two cows are big
8. The bread which thou (m.) hast bought in the new market is cheaper than the bread which I have bought in the shop
9. Who has split the nut which was on the table in my room and who has eaten its core? - Salim

10. These two vineyards are bigger split it and ate its core
11. These two newspapers are bigger than the two vineyards of my brother
12. These papers are bigger than the two newspapers of Zayd
13. We have two asses are smaller than thy (m.) two asses
14. We have two vineyards and you (m.) have two houses.

Thirty-fourth Lesson

1. Ibrahim divided the piece of the meat into two parts. Then he put each of the two parts in a scale of the balance
2. The balance of my brother is bigger than the balance of thy (m.) grand-father
3. What hast thou (m.) done with the sugar which I have bought in the new market? - I first divided it into two parts then I put each of the two parts on the table in my room
4. My brother has two oxen and I have two fat cows
5. Thy (m.) father said to thy (m.) brother: draw for me two automobiles and thy (m.) brother drew then two automobiles
6. My brother and my sister went to school in the forenoon and returned from there in the after-noon
7. Where is my sister and thy (m.) sister? - They (dual) went to school
8. From where did I and my brother return? - You (dual) have returned from school
9. This book is cheap and that book is a little cheaper than it
10. I drank a little from the milk and ate a little from the bread and my brother ate and drank more than I
11. The two new houses of my brother are much larger than the two houses of Salim
12. The two sisters of Salim have much written and read to-day
13. I have not gone to school to-day because my father is ill
14. My brother has not gone to school to-day because he is ill
15. What hast thou (m.) eaten in the forenoon? - I ate bread and a piece of meat.

1. كَلْبًا أَخِي فِي بُسْتَانِ أَخِيكَ 2. الْأَرْبَعَانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ
3. فِي كَرَمِ الْعَمِّ 4. بَقَرَتَا جَدَّتِي أَسْمُنُ مِنْ بَيْتَاهُ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 5. أَيْنَ جَرِيدَتَا الْمُدِيرِ؟ - هُمَا عَلَى بَقَرَتِي الْخَيْطِطِ 6. بَيْتُ الْخُبَّازِ وَبُسْتَانُ الْمَلِيَّةِ فِي غُرْفَةِ الْأَبِ 7. بَيْتُ الْخُبَّازِ وَبُسْتَانُ

7. ثَوْرَاهَا أَكْبَرُ مِنْ ثَوْرَيْهِ 8. كَلَبَا الْخَيْطِ وَأَرْبَابَهُ
9. حِجَارًا خَالِيَةً وَجَاحِلَاهَا 10. لَهُ حِجَارٌ وَاحِدٌ وَثَوْرَانِ
وَلَنَا حِجَارَانِ وَثَوْرٌ وَاحِدٌ

Thirty-sixth Lesson

1. أَخِي وَقَفَ بَيْنَ الْجَبَدِ وَالْأَخْتِ 2. مَا سَمِعَ
فِي عُرْفَةِ الْكَلْبِ 3. هُوَ سَمِعَ هُنَاكَ أَنْكَ مَرِيضٌ
4. أَخِي أَخَذَتْ اللَّحْمَ وَقَسَمَتْهُ إِلَى قِسْمَيْنِ 5. أَيْنَ
الْكِرْسَاءُ الْجَدِيدِ 6. الَّذِي اشْتَرَيْتَهُ فِي الدُّكَّانِ
الْجَدِيدِ 7. أَخَذَكَ وَضَعْتَهُ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ
8. بَقَرَتَاكَ أَسْمَنُ مِنْ بَقَرَتِي جَدَّتِي 9. بَيْتَاهُ أَقْرَبُ
مِنْ بَيْتِكَ 10. لِي كِتَابَانِ جَدِيدَانِ وَلَهُ أَيْضًا كِتَابَانِ
جَدِيدَانِ 11. أَيْنَ الْحِجَارَيْنِ 12. هُمَا فِي الْبُسْتَانِ 13. أَيْنَ
بَيْتِ الْخَيْطِ الْجَدِيدَيْنِ 14. هُمَا فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ
15. لَنَا ثَوْرَانِ وَلَهَا أَيْضًا ثَوْرَانِ 16. حِجَارَتِي أَكْبَرُ
مِنْ حِجَارَتِي أَخِي 17. مَتَى زَارَ مُعَلِّمُكَ خَالَتَا 18. هُوَ
زَارَهُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 19. جَدَّتُهَا زَارَتْ الْيَوْمَ أُمَّ الْمُعَلِّمِ
20. أَيْنَ تَعَلَّمْتَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ 21. تَعَلَّمْتُهَا فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

Thirty-eighth Lesson

1. The Moslems do not drink wine and do not eat pork
2. The teachers and the lady-teachers of my school (in Arabic,
the teachers of my school and its lady-teachers) have visited in the after-
noon the mosque which is in the quarter of the blacksmiths
3. Where did thy (m) brother learn the Arabic language?—My
brother learned the Arabic language in the school which is in
the Jaffa street 4. Hasst thou (m) learned the English language
at school?—Yes I have learned it there 5. What are the four
directions?—The four directions are: East, West, North and South
6. What hast thou (m) learned at school to-day?—I have learned
the four directions to-day 7. Thy teachers have visited the
teachers of my brother in the school 8. Where is the little
brother of the neighbour?—He is now playing in front of the
garden and is shouting in a loud voice 9. Who shouted in
front of the house in the forenoon?—The little brother
of the neighbour played and shouted in front of the house
10. These teachers have been to-day in the forest and those
teachers have been to-day in Jaffa 11. My brother learned the
Arabic and the English languages at school. 12. Where is thy (m)
dog now?—It is now in the room of grand-mother 13. The
teachers and the lady-teachers have been in Jerusalem to-day.
14. Where are the lady-teachers of this school?—They (f) are
in the vineyard of my grand-mother.

1. إِنِّي كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الَّتِي فِي شَارِعِ
يَافَا 2. عَمَّئَا كَانَ الْيَوْمَ فِي الْقُدْسِ وَمُعَلِّمِي أَيْضًا
كَانَ هُنَاكَ 3. أَيْنَ أَخِي الصَّغِيرُ الْأَخْصَنُ 4. هِيَ تَلْعَبُ
أَمَامَ الْجَسَامِيعِ 5. هَذَا الشَّارِعُ أَطْوَلُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ
الشَّارِعِ 6. الْخُيَّاطُونَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي بُسْتَانِ الْجَدِيدِ
7. مَنْ رَأَى الْخُيَّاطِينَ الْيَوْمَ 8. أَنَا رَأَيْتُ الْخُيَّاطِينَ
بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 9. مَعَلِّمُوا هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةَ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ

8. تَعَلَّمْتُ اللَّهُمَّ الْإِنْجِيلِيَّةَ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ. وَأَيْنَ تَعَلَّمَ ابْنُكَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟
هُوَ تَعَلَّمَ اللَّهُمَّ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ فِي يَافَا. 10. مُدِيرُ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَمُعَلِّمُهَا رَجَعُوا الْيَوْمَ مِنَ الْقُدْسِ

Lesson 42

1. Where are the newspapers which I have bought in the forenoon? — They are on my table. 2. Where hast thou (m.) bought these new copy-books? — I have bought them in the new shop. 3. Take this chalk and draw a man on the blackboard. 4. The blackboard is black and the chalk is white. 5. One ship of the ships which I saw in the morning has sunk in the afternoon. 6. The bear is bigger than the wolf and the elephant is bigger than the bear. 7. I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the forest which is near Jaffa. 8. When didst thou (m.) buy these books? — I bought them last year. 9. For how much (money) did the farmer sell the fox and for how much (money) did he buy the ass? — The farmer sold the fox for one Palestinian pound and bought the ass for two Palestinian pounds. 10. This merchant and his partner opened a new shop in the new market. 11. The partners of this company are richer than the partners of that company. 12. These hares are bigger than those hares. 13. The houses in this street are bigger than the houses (that are) in that street. 14. I have seen to-day the pupils of this school in the large forest which is near Haifa.

Lesson 43

1. The farmer have sown to-day turnip in the garden. 2. The landlord has been to-day in the village and has bought there for one Palestinian pound straw from the farmers. 3. These pupils are diligent and those (pupils) are lazy. 4. These schools are larger than those (schools). 5. Where didst thou (m.) leave the dogs of my grand-father? — I left them in the vineyard. 6. These houses are larger than the houses in that street. 7. When hast thou (m.) bought these cocks? — I bought them yesterday. 8. What has Iorahim drawn in the new copy-book? — He has drawn there straight lines. 9. This line is longer than all the other lines. 10. The sons of the neighbour are lazy and his daughters are diligent. 11. The daughters of my brother have learned in this school and his sons have learned in the school which is in the old city. 12. The farmers who went out from the mosque went to Jaffa.

13. From where did the pupils who have now entered the school return? — They returned from the forest. 14. What has the director of the school given to the pupils? — He has given them new book. 15. These copy-books are dear. They are dearer than those copy-books. 16. The sugar which I have bought in this shop is dearer than the sugar which I have bought in the market.

1. هُوَ لَاءُ الْمُفْلَحُونَ أَخِي مِنْ أَوْلَادِكَ الْمُفْلَحِينَ.
2. أَيْنَ اشْتَرَيْتُمْ هَذِهِ الْكُتُبَ الْجَدِيدَةَ؟ أَنَا اشْتَرَيْتُهَا فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ. هُوَ لَاءُ التَّلَامِيذِ كَسَلَانُونَ وَأَوْلَادِكَ التَّلَامِيذُ مُجَهِّدُونَ. 4. صَاحِبُ هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتِ غَنِيٌّ. هُوَ أَخِي مِنْ صَاحِبِ تِلْكَ الْبُيُوتِ. 5. أَيْنَ كَلَّابُ الْجَدِّ؟ هِيَ فِي بُسْتَانِ الْجَارِ. 6. تَلَامِيذُ هَذِهِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ كَانُوا الْيَوْمَ فِي الْغَابَةِ وَتَلَامِيذُ تِلْكَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ كَانُوا هُنَاكَ الْبَارِحَ. 7. الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ الْقَدِيمِ. 8. أَخِي بَاعَ بَيْتَهُ الْقَدِيمَ وَاشْتَرَى بَيْتًا جَدِيدًا. 9. رَأَيْتُ الْبَارِحَ دُبًا كَبِيرًا فِي قَفْصٍ. 10. الْمَدَارِسُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ صَغِيرَةٌ. هِيَ أَصْعَبُ مِنَ الْمَدَارِسِ فِي تِلْكَ الْقَرْيَةِ. 11. هَذِهِ الدَّقَاقِرُ أَرْحَصُ مِنَ تِلْكَ الدَّقَاقِرِ. 12. هَذِهِ الْبُيُوتُ الْجَدِيدَةُ أَصْعَبُ مِنَ تِلْكَ الْبُيُوتِ الْقَدِيمَةِ. 13. هُوَ لَاءُ الْخُبَّازُونَ أَغْنِيَاءُ. هُمْ أَخِي مِنْ أَوْلَادِكَ الْخُبَّازِينَ.

Lesson 46

1. What is there on the table? — On the table there are books, copy-books and newspapers. 2. We have drunk coffee in big cups and they (m.) have drunk coffee in small cups. 3. What didst thou (m.) buy in the new shop? — I bought there newspapers, copy-books and books. 4. A thief entered the room of my big brother and stole the clock which my brother bought yesterday. 5. I have written to-day with blue ink and my sister has written with red ink. 6. My brother was in the magistrate's court (in Arabic, court of peace) and there saw the advocate who was yesterday in the vineyard of my grandfather. 7. Who has seen my new house? — My mother saw it yesterday. 8. Thy father said that he waited for thee (m.) in the magistrate's court is in the Moslem quarter. 10. Where is the cheese which I have bought in the market? — It is in the kitchen. 11. I have bought to-day in the market apples, grapes and nuts. 12. This apple is sour and that apple is sweet. 13. This nut is bigger than that nut.

1. هَذِهِ السَّاعَةُ أَكْبَرُ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا

أَخُوكَ فِي الْقُدْسِ 2. أَيْنَ الْجَيْبَةِ الَّتِي وَصَفْتَهَا عَلَيَّ

الْمَائِدَةِ 3. هِيَ عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ فِي الطَّبِيعِ 3. هَذَا

الْإِفْخَاحُ حَامِضٌ. هُوَ أَخْضَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ الَّتِي لَمْ تَفْخَاحْ

4. مَنْ رَأَى الْيَوْمَ مُدِيرَ هَذِهِ الْمُدْرَسَةِ 2. أَنَا رَأَيْتُهُ

الْيَوْمَ 5. هَذَا الْبَيْتُ الْجَدِيدُ أَصْغَرُ مِنْ بَيْتِ

الْعَمِّ الْقَدِيمِ 6. مَا اشْتَرَيْ أَخُوكَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ

الْجَدِيدِ 2. هُوَ اشْتَرَى هُنَاكَ كُتُبًا وَدَفَاتِرَ 7. الْبُيُوتُ

فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ بُيُوتِ تِلْكَ الْقَرْيَةِ

ف. لِي كَلْبٌ أَبْيَضٌ وَكَلْبٌ أَسْوَدٌ. الْكَلْبُ الْإِصْبَعُ

أَسْتَعْنُ مِنَ الْكَلْبِ الْأَسْوَدِ 9. مَنْ رَأَى أَحْمَدَ
الْيَوْمَ 2. أَيْ رَأَيْتَهُ فِي السُّوقِ الْجَدِيدِ 10. إِبْرَاهِيمُ
أَكْبَرُ مِنْ أَحْمَدَ وَأَحْمَدُ أَكْبَرُ مِنْ سَالِمٍ 11. أَيْ
كَانَ الْبَارِحَ فِي حَقْلِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ

Lesson 49

1. The father of my father and the father of my mother are my grand-fathers (dual). The mother of my father and the mother of my mother are my grand-mothers (dual) and I am their (m.) grand-son. 2. What has thy (m.) grand-father planted in your (m.) garden to-day? — My grand-father has planted date-palms in our garden to-day. 3. Salim and his father went out from the magistrate's court and returned to their (dual) house which is in the old city. 4. Salima and her mother have been in the mosque to-day. 5. My father and my mother are my parents (dual) and I am their (dual) son. My parents (dual) have other sons and daughters. Their (dual) sons are my brothers and their (dual) daughters are my sisters. 6. My brother has been once in Jerusalem and twice in Haifa. 7. My sister has been to-day in the zoo and there saw various vultures. 8. What is the thing that the old man has carried from the forest? — The old man has carried a bundle of fire-wood from there. 9. Where are the new books which thou (m.) didst buy yesterday? — My big (elder) brother took them. 10. My teachers and thine (m.) have been to-day in the Moslem quarter. 11. The daughters of our neighbourhood and his sons have been to-day in the forest which is near our village. 12. Where are thy (m.) two new books and where are my two copy-books? — My two new books are in my room and thy (m.) two copy-books also are there.

Lesson 50

1. How many times has thy (m.) big (elder) brother been in Jaffa to-day? — My big brother has been there twice to-day. 2. This hunter has hunted two horses to-day and slaughtered one of them (dual) and sold its meat in the market. 3. This hunter always hunts in the forest which is near your (m.) village. 4. Why does the child weep and (why do) the tears run from his eyes (dual)? — He weeps because of the glacial (in Arabic, of the strength of) cold. 5. Thy (m.) pupil came to me and after he saluted me said that thou (m.) didst wait for me in thy (m.) new house. 6. The teacher of Zayd passed by my father and saluted him. 7. Thy (m.) uncle

(on the father's side) has visited me yesterday and I shall visit him to-morrow, God willing! 8. When will thy (m.) uncle (on the mother's side) visit me? — He will visit thee (m.) in the afternoon, God willing! 9. Thy (m.) teachers have visited my teachers in the school to-day 10. Thy (m.) new houses are larger than their (m.) new houses 11. Who saw my two new houses? — I saw them (dual) 12. The two dogs of my brother are bigger than thy (m.) two dogs.

1. كِتَابُهُ الْجَدِيدَانِ فِي غُرْفَتِي الصَّغِيرَةِ 2. ابْنِ كِتَابَانَا - هُمَا فِي غُرْفَتِهِ جَدِيدًا 3. كَمْ كِتَابًا اشْتَرَى أَبُوكَ الْبَارِحَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 4. ابْنِي اشْتَرَى الْبَارِحَ فِي هَذِهِ كِتَابَيْنِ 5. كَمْ ارْتَبَا صَادُ الصِّيَادِ الْبَارِحَ فِي هَذِهِ الْغَابَةِ 6. هُوَ صَادُ الْبَارِحَ ارْتَبَانِي 7. اخوه زَارَنِي الْبَارِحَ 8. وَاَنَا سَازُورُهُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 9. ابْنِي دَفْتَرَايَ 10. اخوك اخذها 11. مَنْ رَأَى الْيَوْمَ حِمَارِي جَدِيدِي 12. اخو جَارِنَا رَآهَا 13. مَعْلَمُوا الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ زَارُوا الْيَوْمَ مَعْلَمَيْنَا 14. هَتَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ اسْمُهُنِ بَقَرَتَيْنَا 15. حِمَارَانَا اكْبَرُ مِنْ حِمَارَيْكُم 16. كَمْ دَفْتَرًا اشْتَرَى اخوك بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ 17. هُوَ اشْتَرَى دَفْتَرَيْنِ 18. اخُذْنَا اكْبَرُ مِنْ اخْتِكُمْ واخْتِكُمْ اكْبَرُ مِنْ اخْتِكُمْ

Lesson 53

1. My cow is bigger than thy (m.) cow. It is the biggest cow in this village. 2. I have two red cows and thou (m.) hast two black cows 3. My neighbour has slaughtered to-day two lambs and distributed the meat gratis among the poor of this quarter 4. Our neighbour opened a fish-shop in the market which is in the old city 5. These children are dumb and those (children) are deaf. 6. Our neighbour has a big and fat ox. It is the biggest and fattest (ox) in our village. 7. My brother Ibrahim learns in the new school. He is the smallest pupil in it 8. My big brother has two big automobiles. He bought them (dual) last year in Jerusalem 9. The lessons in this book are easy and the lessons in that book are difficult 10. These lessons are easier than those (lessons) 11. This chair is heavy and that chair is light 12. This chair is heavier than that (chair). 13. That chair is lighter than this (chair) 14. I have a new house and my brother has a new house. The house of my brother is newer than my house 15. The two dumb sisters of our neighbour have visited to-day my big sister.

1. جَمَلَهُ اكْبَرُ مِنْ جَمَلِنَا 2. حِمَارُنَا هُوَ الْخِصَانُ الْاَكْبَرُ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ 3. اشْتَرَى اخِي الْبَارِحَ بَقَرَتَيْنِ بَيْضَتَيْنِ 4. هَتَانِ الْبَقَرَتَانِ الْبَيْضَتَانِ سَمِيكَتَانِ 5. هَذَا التِّلْهَمُذُ كَسَلَانُ وَذَلِكَ التِّلْهَمُذُ مُجْتَهِدٌ 6. لِي حَبْرٌ اَحْمَرٌ وَلَهَا حَبْرٌ اَزْرَقٌ 7. ابْنِي اشْتَرَى صَدِيقُكَ الْخَيْرَ الْاَحْمَرَ 8. هُوَ اشْتَرَى الْخَيْرَ الْاَحْمَرَ فِي الدُّكَّانِ الْجَدِيدِ 9. الدُّرُوسُ الْيَوْمَ صَفِيَّةٌ 10. هَذِهِ الدُّرُوسُ اَسْهَلُ مِنْ تِلْكَ الدُّرُوسِ 11. فَتَحَ هَذَا الْمُبَالَاكَ السَّكْرِيَّ 12. تِلْهَمُذُ اخِي فَتَحَهُ 13. ابْنِ الْبَقَرَةِ الْبَيْضَةِ الَّتِي اشْتَرَيْهَا الْبَارِحَ

البقرة البيضاء في بستان جدية 12. هذه المائدة
تقبل وتلك المائدة خفيفة 13. تلك المائدة أخف من
هذه المائدة 14. هذه المائدة أثقل من تلك المائدة

Lesson 56

1. My elder brother has two big cars and the other is a transport-car (duel) is a passenger-car are 7 days and they are as follows: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. In the day there are 24 hours; in the hour there are 60 minutes; in the $\frac{1}{2}$ hour there are 30 minutes; in the $\frac{1}{4}$ hour there are 15 minutes and in the $\frac{1}{8}$ hour there are 20 minutes. As to the minute it has 60 seconds. 4. In each Palestinian pound there are 100 piastres and in each piastre 10 mils. 5. For how much (money) hast thou (m.) bought to-day apples and for how much (money) hast thou (m.) bought grapes?— I have bought to-day apples for 7 piastres and grapes for 13 piastres. 6. For how much (money) didst thou (m.) buy these two copy-books? I bought one of them (duel) for 6 mils and the other (I bought) for 20 mils. 7. How old art thou (m.)? — I am 15 years old. 8. I am 25 years old and my elder brother is 33 years old. 9. I have bought 4 new books to-day and my brother has bought 12 books. 10. My little brother was in Jaffa twice, in Haifa times and in Jerusalem 12 times.

Page 136

1. In this street there are 25 houses and in that street there are 27 houses. 2. Where hast thou (m.) learned the Arabic language? — I have learned it in an evening school. 3. In this town there are 4 evening schools for teaching the labourers reading and writing. 4. Does this farmer know the reading and the writing? — No, this farmer does not know reading nor writing. He is illiterate.

5. Ahmad, read what I have written on the blackboard. 6. The teacher said to his pupil: Ibrahim, read what Zayd has written on the blackboard. 7. In this evening school there are 56 pupils. 8. The wife of our neighbour does not know (the) reading nor (the) writing. She is illiterate. 9. The husband of this woman learns the Arabic language in one of the evening schools. 10. My father has 12 cows and 5 camels.

1. كم تلميذا في هذه المدرسة؟ في هذه المدرسة اربعة وتسعون تلميذا 2. لجدتي ثلاثة كلاب كبيرة وخطلي كلبان 3. في هذا الكتاب ستون درهما وفي ذلك الكتاب سبعة وستون درهما 4. في هذه الغرفة اربعة شيايك وفي غرفة اختي ثلاثة شيايك. اشتريت بعد الظهر خمسة كتب في الدكان الجديد 7. ان كم اخو جارنا؟ 8. ان تسع عشرة سنة 9. كم مرة كان جازنا في يافا؟ 10. هو كان هناك مرتين او ثلاث مرات 11. في هذه القرية مدرستان مسائليان

Lesson 58

1. The 10th lesson in this book is easier than the 16th lesson and the 53rd lesson is more difficult than the 11th lesson. 2. This peasant ploughed his field to-day from 5 o'clock in the morning until 11 o'clock. 3. My brother ploughs his field twice every day, once (in Arabic, the first time) from 6 o'clock

in the morning and once (٥ Arabic, and the other time) from 3 o'clock to 5 o'clock in the afternoon 4. A society was founded in this town to combat illiterateness 6. The peasant bought in this shop a sickle and his wife bought there a knife 7. This book is composed of three parts. In the first part there are 225 pages, in the second part there are 364 pages and in the third part there are 286 pages.

١. كِتَابُ أَخِي مُؤَلَّفٌ مِنْ جُزْئَيْنِ فِي الْجُزْءِ الْأَوَّلِ ثَلَاثُمِائَةٌ وَخَمْسٌ وَخَمْسُونَ صَفْحَةً وَفِي الْجُزْءِ الثَّانِي أَرْبَعُمِائَةٌ وَتِسْعٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ صَفْحَةً ٢. كُنْتُ الْبَارِحَ فِي الثَّمَدِسِ مِنَ السَّاعَةِ الثَّامِنَةِ صَبَاحًا إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الثَّلَاثَةِ بَعْدَ الظُّرِّ ٣. الدَّرْسُ السَّادِسُ عَشَرَ فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ أَصْنَبُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ السَّابِقِ وَالثَّلَاثِينَ ٤. مَتَى كَتَبَ أَخُوكَ دُرُوسَهُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ ٥. هُوَ كَتَبَهَا مِنَ السَّاعَةِ السَّادِسَةِ إِلَى السَّاعَةِ الثَّامِنَةِ مَسَاءً ٦. ابْنُ الْجُزْءِ الثَّلَاثِ مِنْ هَذَا الْكِتَابِ ٧. هُوَ فِي عُرْفَةِ اخْتِنَا ٨. مَا كَتَبْتَ اخْتُكَ بَعْدَ الظُّرِّ ٩. هِيَ كَتَبَتِ الدَّرْسَ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ ١٠. هَذَا الدَّرْسُ أَسْهَلُ مِنَ الدَّرْسِ الثَّامِنِ وَالْمِشْرِينِ ١١. كَمْ دَرَسًا فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ ١٢. فِي هَذَا الْكِتَابِ سِتُّونَ وَخَمْسُونَ دَرَسًا